

IBM Copy Services Manager
Version 6 Release 2

Command-Line Interface User's Guide



Note:

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in “Notices” on page 195.

This edition applies to Version 6, Release 2, Modification 5 of IBM Copy Services Manager and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

© **Copyright IBM Corporation 2005, 2019.**

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Tables	v
---------------	----------

About this guide	vii
-------------------------	------------

Who should read this guide.	vii
Command-line interface conventions.	vii
Syntax diagram conventions.	vii
Command entry	viii
Command modes.	x
User assistance for commands	xii
Output from command processing	xiii
Publications and related information	xvii
Sending comments.	xix
Contacting IBM Software Support	xx
Reporting a problem	xx

Summary of changes	xxi
---------------------------	------------

Chapter 1. Customizing the command-line interface	1
----------------------------------------------------------	----------

Configuring the command-line interface	1
Setting up automatic login to the CLI	1

Chapter 2. csmcli command descriptions	3
-----------------------------------------------	----------

adddevice	8
addemailalert.	11
addemailserver	12
addhost	13
addmc	14
addstorsys.	15
chauth	16
chdevice	17
chhost	19
chlocation	21
chmc	22
chsess	23
chsystem	36
chuser	37
chvol	37
cmdsess	39
cmdsnapgrp	42
csmcli	46
dcrequestaction	49
exportcsv	50
exportgmdata.	51
hareconnect	53
hatakeover	54
importcsv	55
lsauth	56
lsauthcfg	58
lsavailports	60
lsbackups	62
lsbackupvols	64
lscpset	66

lscptypes	69
lsdevice.	73
lsdcrequests	77
lsemailalert	79
lsemailserver	80
lshaservers	82
lshost	84
lslocation	87
lslss	89
lsmc	91
lspair	93
lsparemeter	97
lspath	99
lspool	102
lsrolepairs	104
lsrolescpset	108
lssess	109
lssessactions.	113
lssessdetails	115
lssnapgrp.	118
lssnapgrpactions	120
lssnapshots	122
lssnmp	124
lsstorcandidate	125
lstasks.	127
lsvol	129
mkadcfg	133
mkauth	134
mkbackup	135
mkcpset	136
mkdevicedump.	140
mkldapcfg	141
mklogpkg	142
mkpath	143
mksess	144
mksnmp	147
mkuser	148
refreshdevice	149
rmactive	150
rassoc	151
rauth	152
rauthcfg	152
rmcpset	153
rmdevice	154
rmemailalert.	156
rmemailserver	157
rmhost	157
rmmc	158
rmpath	158
rmsess.	159
rmsnmp	160
rmstdby	161
rmstorsys.	161
rmuser	162
runtask	163
setasstdby	164

setparameter	164
setrolepaircg.	165
setstdby	166
showcpset	167
showdevice	169
showgmdetails	172
showha	175
showhost.	175
showmc	179
showsess	180
syncauthservice	183
testalert	185
ver	185
whoami	186

Appendix. Configuration files 187

bootstrap.properties file	187
csmConnections.properties file	189
diagnostics.properties file	190
repcli.properties file	190
rmserver.properties file	191

Notices 195

Privacy policy considerations	197
Trademarks	197

Index 199

Tables

1.	Return codes for the csmcli command	xiii	3.	IBM Copy Services Manager related websites	xix
2.	IBM Copy Services Manager product publications	xvii	4.	Summary of changes in Copy Services Manager Version 6.2.5 (March 2019)	xxi

About this guide

IBM® Copy Services Manager is a software product that manages data-copy functions. By using the IBM Copy Services Manager command-line interface (CLI), you can interact with the product by entering CLI commands. This guide provides the CLI commands that you can enter, as well as their definitions, syntax, and examples.

Who should read this guide

This publication is intended for users of the CLI program for Copy Services Manager.

Command-line interface conventions

Information is provided about using the CLI program for Copy Services Manager. It includes information about command conventions and modes, command format requirements, and other usage information.

Syntax diagram conventions

A *syntax diagram* uses symbols to represent the elements of a command and to specify the rules for using these elements.

Within a syntax diagram, a *keyword* represents the name of a command, flag, parameter, or argument. Required keywords indicate the parameters or arguments that must be specified for the command.

To read syntax diagrams, follow the path of the line:

- Required keywords are displayed on the main path line. Mutually exclusive required keywords are stacked vertically. Optional keywords indicate the parameters or arguments that you can choose to specify for the command. Optional keywords are shown under the main path line. Mutually exclusive optional keywords are stacked vertically.
- The main path line begins with double arrowheads (>>) and ends with two arrowheads that point to each other (><). If a diagram is longer than one line, each line to be continued ends with a single arrowhead (>) and the next line begins with a single arrowhead. The -->< symbol indicates the end of the syntax diagram.
- A dash (-) indicates that you must supply parameters from the stdin file rather than entering parameters.
- An arrow that returns to the start of an item means you can repeat the item. A character or space within the arrow means you must separate repeated items with that character or space.
- A stack of items followed by an arrow that returns to the start of the stack indicates that you can select more than one item. In some cases, you can repeat a single item.
- When a group of parameters is lengthy or a section is used multiple times in a command, it is shown as a separate fragment that follows the main diagram.

Syntax diagrams use position to indicate required, optional, and default values for keywords, variables, and operands:

- If an element is shown on the line, the element is required. If an element is shown under the line, the element is optional. If an element is shown over the line, the element is the default.
- If an operand has a default value, the operand is shown both over and under the main line. A value under the main line indicates that the operand must be specified. You must specify the default value or one of the other valid values that are shown. If an operand is not specified, the default value over the main line is used.
- When one or more items are shown under the main line, all of the items are optional.

Command emphasis

The following typefaces are used to show command emphasis:

boldface

Text in **boldface** represents command names.

italics Text in *italics* is used for variables for which you supply actual values, such as a default directory or the name of a cluster.

monospace

Text in monospace identifies the data or commands that you type, samples of command output, examples of program code or messages from the system, or names of command flags, parameters, arguments, and name-value pairs.

Special characters

The following special characters are used in the command descriptions:

minus sign (-)

Flags are prefixed with a minus sign (-). Flags define the action of a command or modify the operation of a command. You can use multiple flags, followed by parameters, when you issue a command. This character cannot be used as the first character of an object name.

vertical bar (|)

A vertical bar signifies that you choose only one value.

For example, [a | b] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing. Similarly, { a | b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.

quotation marks (" ")

Quotation marks around a string indicate that the value can include spaces, for example, "my session name."

brackets ([])

Brackets indicate optional options, parameters, and arguments.

braces ({ })

Braces indicate a required choice between two or more options or arguments.

ellipsis (...)

Ellipses indicate repetition or multiple values or arguments.

Command entry

You are guided through how to enter commands in a valid format.

Order of parameters

Parameters can be entered in any order, with the following exceptions:

- The first argument that follows the command name must be the action that is to be performed.
- If you are performing an action on a specific object, the object ID or name must be the last argument in the line.

Multiple values

For any commands that accept multiple input values of the same type, delimit the values with a comma with no spaces in the input string. For example, `-vol 3,5,8,9`.

For any commands that require multiple value types in one string, delimit the value types with a period. For example, if a volume requires a device number and a volume number, you might specify `-vol FCA86.3,FCA78.5,FCA96.8`. When input values are of different types but specified in the same flag, use a colon. For example, to specify a minimum and maximum value in the same flag, you would type `-size min:max`.

Multiple arguments

Copy Services Manager supports multiple arguments for the **chsess**, **lsdevice**, **lssess**, **lssessactions**, **lsvol**, and **rmssess** commands. If you use a command with multiple arguments, the command is applied for each of the arguments. For example, you might issue the following command to remove `session_a`, `session_b`, and `session_c`.

```
#rmssess session_a session_b session_c
```

When a command runs on more than one argument, the CLI program establishes a single security session to run the command on each of the multiple arguments.

Volumes and locations

The following volume values are valid:

ESS devices

Valid volume values include the device type, component type, device ID, subsystem ID, logical subsystem ID, and volume ID, with each separated by a period or colon. For example:

ESS single volume

```
ESS:2105.65312:VOL:202F (ESS:ELEMENTTYPE.DEVICEID:VOL:LSSVOLNUM)
```

User-defined objects

The requirements for valid user-defined object names are listed:

- User-defined object names can be 250 characters or fewer, unless otherwise noted.
- Valid characters are A-Z, a-z, 0 - 9, dash (-), underscore (_), period (.), and colon (:).
- Object names must start with an alphanumeric character.
- Most object names cannot contain any blank spaces. However, you can include blanks in session names and location names.

- Do not translate user-defined objects or otherwise modify them from the user's entry. These objects are to remain case-sensitive.

User-defined descriptions

The requirements for valid user-defined descriptions are listed:

- If a description contains spaces, it must be enclosed in matching double quotation marks or single quotation marks.
- If a description that is already enclosed in matching quotation marks includes an asterisk, the asterisk must be preceded by an escape character, for example, `-desc "This is the * pool"`.
- If a description that is already enclosed in matching quotation marks includes double quotation marks or single quotation marks within the actual text string, these characters must be escaped. For example, `-desc "This is Hanna\'s description"` or `-desc "This is the pool I call \"Foo\"."`
- User-defined descriptions can be 250 characters or fewer. They cannot contain any leading blank spaces.
- User-defined descriptions should not be translated or otherwise modified from the user's entry. The user-defined descriptions should remain case-sensitive.
- The CLI is sensitive to case when it interprets user-defined object names that are given as input. For example, object F00 is different from object foo.

Command modes

You can use the command-line interface (CLI) to run a single command or a series of commands, either interactively or from a script.

Single-shot mode

If you want to run only a single command, specify the **csmdi** program and the command that you want to run from the shell prompt, for example:

```
shell> csmdi lslocation
Location  Details
=====
1         Boulder
3         Marana
2         Tucson
shell>
```

Interactive mode

If you want to run several commands, start a CLI session by using the **csmdi** program with no parameters or arguments. Then, enter each command at the **csmdi>** shell prompt. For example:

```
shell> csmdi
csmdi> rmsess exmp_session
Are you sure that you want to remove session exmp_session? [y/n]:y
Session exmp_session removed
csmdi> exit
shell>
```

Script mode

If you want to run a set of commands that you defined in a file, use the **csmdi** program with the **-script** parameter. For example:

```
shell> csmdi -script ~/bin/containersetup
shell>
```

You can add comments to the script file by placing a number sign (#) in the first column. For example:

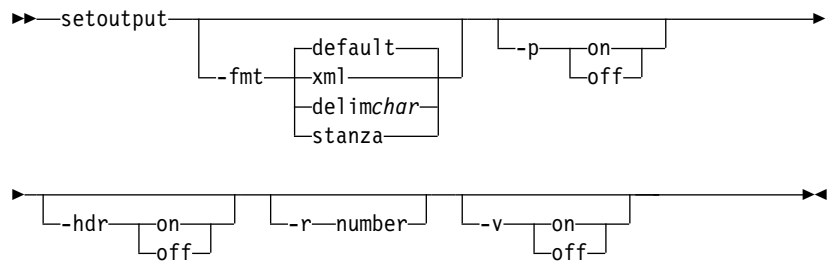
```
# This script file lists the default storage pool.
lspool -l -type default
```

The CLI program recognizes these built-in commands in interactive mode:

setoutput

Specifies various command-output format options. All settings that are specified with **setoutput** remain in effect during the interactive command session unless reset either with a command option or with **setoutput**. With no options, **setoutput** displays the current settings in the default output format. Settings from the **setoutput** command do not apply to help pages; help pages are shown in text output only.

Syntax



Parameters and arguments:

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim char**, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key

displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

help Displays a list of commands available from the CLI session.

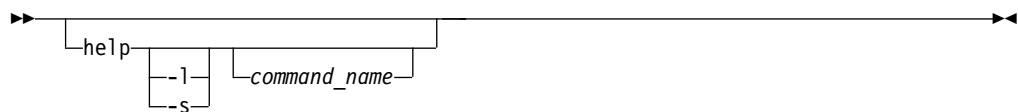
exit Exits from the CLI session.

quit Exits from the CLI session.

User assistance for commands

You can get user assistance for the **csmdi** command by using the **help** command.

Syntax



Parameters

-l Displays a list of all available commands and syntax for each if no other options are specified. If a command name is also specified, this option displays syntax for that command.

-s Displays a list of all available commands and a brief description of each if no other options are specified. If a command name is also specified, this option displays a brief description for that command.

command_name

Displays detailed help for the specified command.

Description

If this command is invoked without any parameters, it displays a list of all available commands.

You can use the command-help parameters (**-help**, **-h**, or **-?**) that are supported by each command to display a detailed description of the specified command. For more information about the command-help parameters, see the description for each command.

Output from command processing

The command output can include information such as prompts, messages, and codes. For some commands, you can specify the output format.

Confirmation prompts

Commands might cause an unrecoverable operation, loss of data, memory drain, or a long-running task, or might have an impact on concurrent operations. In these situations, you receive an interactive confirmation prompt that asks if you are sure that you want to continue with the specific action, such as:

Are you sure you want to xxx? Y/N

All confirmation prompts accept the following input:

YES, yes, Y, y

Confirm the action and continue.

NO, no, N, n

Cancel the action.

Messages

Messages are returned in the format of **IWNCxxxxy**, **IWNRxxxxy**, **IWNHxxxxy**, or **IWNExxxxy**, where **xxxx** is the number of the message and **y** indicates that the message type is **I** (information), **W** (warning), or **E** (error).

Each CLI command issues a return value and message. These messages are output as follows:

- Warning and informational messages are written to stdout.
- Error messages are written to the standard error stream (stderr).
- Messages include an explanation of the problem, if one exists.

Suppression of confirmation prompts and messages

You can use these flags to modify command input:

- To force destructive action, such as making a volume even if the LUN already has a label, use the **-f** flag. This flag suppresses confirmation and error messages.
- To suppress confirmation prompts and messages, use the **-quiet** flag. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Return codes

The following table contains the codes that are returned by the **csmdi** command.

Table 1. Return codes for the **csmdi** command

Code	Category	Description
0	Success	The command was successful.
2	Syntax error	The syntax of the command was not correct.

Table 1. Return codes for the `csmdi` command (continued)

Code	Category	Description
3	Connection error	A connectivity error or protocol error occurred.
4	Server error	An error occurred during a function call to the application server.
5	Authentication error	An error was detected during authentication checking.
6	Application error	An error occurred during processing that is performed by the MetaProvider client application.

Notes:

- In single-shot mode, an exit code is provided after each command.
- In interactive and script mode, an exit code is not provided after each command. Instead, output is echoed to stdout for status information.
- In single-shot and interactive mode, with commands that act on more than one argument if one or more operations fail, the CLI completes the following actions:
 - Complete processing of all operations that it can continue processing
 - Report on all successful completions
 - Report on any failures
- In script mode, the CLI operates the same way. However, if one or more operations fail in the specified file, the CLI issues a failure exit code and automatically exits from the script mode after the failed command.

Options for setting the output format of listings

The standard format parameters set the output format of the listing (**ls**) commands in the CLI program. These parameters can be used either in one of the listing commands or in the **setoutput** command. The format settings remain in effect during the session or until you reset the parameters either by specifying these parameters in a listing command (commands that start with **ls**) or by using the **setoutput** command.

- **-p** specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at one time.
 - **off** displays all text at one time. This option is the default value when the **csmdi** command is run in single-shot mode.
 - **on** displays one page of text at time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This option is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.
- **-r number** specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is on. The default value is 24. You can specify a value in the range 1 - 100.
- **-fmt** specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of the following values:
 - **default** specifies that the output is displayed in a tabular format by using spaces as the delimiter between the columns. This parameter is the default value.
 - **delim character** specifies that the output is displayed in a tabular format by using the specified character to separate the columns. If you use a shell

metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

- **xml** specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.
- **-hdr** specifies whether to display the table header. Use the default value of on to display the table header. Use off to hide the table header.
- **-v** specifies whether to enable verbose mode. Use the default value of off to disable verbose mode. This option is the default value. Use on to enable verbose mode.

These standard listing options modify command output in any CLI mode:

- **lsubject -s** lists only the objects without other columns of information. For example, `lssess -s` lists only the name header and the session names.
- **lsubject -l** lists all the objects with all defined columns, including the description.

Examples of using the **setoutput** command to define output formats

You can set output formats by using the **setoutput** command in interactive or script modes or by using the corresponding standard command options in single-shot mode.

setoutput with no options

When you issue **setoutput** with no options, the CLI always displays the current output settings in the default format (space-separated plain-text table), regardless of the values of the output settings. For example, enter the following command:

```
csmdi> setoutput
Paging Rows Format Header Verbose
=====
off - default on off
```

setoutput -fmt delim char

To obtain long output in comma-separated format for the default storage pool only, enter the following commands:

```
csmdi> setoutput -fmt delim ,
csmdi> lssess -l -type default
```

The following output is then returned:

```
Name,Status,State,Copy Type,
Recoverable,Copying,Copy Sets,Error
=====
session1,Inactive,Defined,Global Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Practice,
No,No,8,No
session2,Inactive,Defined,Global Mirror Failover/Failback,
No,No,0,No
```

To turn off headers, enter the command as shown in the following example:

```
csmdi> setoutput -fmt delim , -hdr off
csmdi> lssess -l -type default
```

The output would then be returned as follows:

```
session1,Inactive,Defined,Global Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Practice,
No,No,8,No
session2,Inactive,Defined,Global Mirror Failover/Failback,
No,No,0,No
```

setoutput -fmt xml

To obtain the long output in XML format for the default storage pool only, enter the following command:

```
csmdi> setoutput -fmt xml
csmdi> lssess -l -type default
```

The output is then returned in XML format as shown in the following example:

```
<IRETURNVALUE>
<INSTANCE CLASSNAME="STC_StoragePool"><PROPERTY NAME="Name" TYPE="string">
<VALUE>DEFAULT_POOL</VALUE></PROPERTY><PROPERTY NAME="PoolType" TYPE="uint32">
<VALUE>1</VALUE></PROPERTY><PROPERTY NAME="PartitionSize" TYPE="uint64">
<VALUE>16</VALUE></PROPERTY>
<PROPERTY NAME="AlertPercentage" TYPE="uint16"><VALUE>80</VALUE></PROPERTY>
<PROPERTY NAME="Size" TYPE="uint64"><VALUE>0</VALUE></PROPERTY>
<PROPERTY NAME="SizeAllocated" TYPE="uint64">
<VALUE>0</VALUE></PROPERTY><PROPERTY NAME="SizeAllocatedPercentage" TYPE="uint16">
<VALUE>0</VALUE></PROPERTY>
<PROPERTY NAME="NumberOfVolumes" TYPE="uint32"><VALUE>0</VALUE></PROPERTY>
<PROPERTY NAME="Description" TYPE="string"><VALUE>Default storage pool</VALUE>
</PROPERTY></INSTANCE>
</IRETURNVALUE>
```

setoutput -fmt default

To return the output format to the default (space-separated columns), enter the command as follows:

```
csmdi> setoutput -fmt default
csmdi> lssess -l type default
```

The output is then returned as follows:

Name	Type	Size(GB)	Used(GB)	Used(%)	Alert(%)	Volumes
DEFAULT	Default	10000	2500	25	80	10

Partition	Size (MB)	Description
64	Default	Storage Pool

setoutput -fmt stanza

When columns are wide, output can be difficult to visually align. However, the stanza format option eliminates this problem. To obtain long output in stanza format for the default storage pool only, enter the command as follows:

```
csmdi> setoutput -fmt stanza
csmdi> lssess -l -type default
```

The output is then returned in the following format:

Name	DEFAULT
Type	Default
Size (GB)	10000
Used (GB)	2500
Used (%)	25
Alert (%)	80
Volumes	10
Partition Size (MB)	64
Description	Default storage pool

Name	Personnel
Type	System
Size (GB)	10000
Used (GB)	2500
Used (%)	25

Alert (%)	80
Volumes	20
Partition Size (MB)	64
Description	Personnel data

Publications and related information

Product guides, other IBM publications, and websites contain information that relates to IBM Copy Services Manager.

To view a PDF file, you need Adobe Reader. You can download it at no charge from the Adobe website (get.adobe.com/reader/).

Online documentation

The IBM Copy Services Manager online product documentation (<http://www-01.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSESK4>) contains all of the information that is required to install, configure, and manage IBM Copy Services Manager. The online documentation is updated between product releases to provide the most current documentation.

Publications

You can order or download individual publications that have an order number from the IBM Publications Center website (www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order/).

Table 2. IBM Copy Services Manager product publications

Title	Description	Order number
<i>IBM Copy Services Manager Installation and Configuration Guide</i>	This guide provides task-oriented information for anyone who installs and configures IBM Copy Services Manager.	V6.2.5 SC27-8543-09 V6.2.3 SC27-8543-08 V6.2.2 SC27-8543-07 V6.2.1 SC27-8543-06 V6.2.0 SC27-8543-05 V6.1.5 SC27-8543-04 V6.1.4 SC27-8543-03 V6.1.3 SC27-8543-02 V6.1.2 SC27-8543-01 V6.1.0 SC27-8543-00
<i>IBM Copy Services Manager User's Guide</i>	This guide provides task-oriented information for users of IBM Copy Services Manager. Users should be familiar with the following topics <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Copy Services concepts • General principles of IBM AIX®, Linux, Windows, and the IBM z/OS operating systems • Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) concepts • Storage Area Network (SAN) concepts 	V6.2.5 SC27-8542-11 V6.2.4 SC27-8542-10 V6.2.3 SC27-8542-09 V6.2.2 SC27-8542-08 V6.2.1 SC27-8542-07 V6.2.0 SC27-8542-06 V6.1.5 SC27-8542-05 V6.1.4 SC27-8542-04 V6.1.3 SC27-8542-03 V6.1.2 SC27-8542-02 V6.1.1 SC27-8542-01 V6.1.0 SC27-8542-00

Table 2. IBM Copy Services Manager product publications (continued)

Title	Description	Order number
<i>IBM Copy Services Manager Command-line Interface User's Guide</i>	This guide provides information for customizing and using the command-line interface for IBM Copy Services Manager. This guide provides information for customizing and using the command-line interface for IBM Copy Services Manager.	V6.2.5 SC27-8998-06 V6.2.4 SC27-8998-05 V6.2.3 SC27-8998-04 V6.2.2 SC27-8998-03 V6.2.1 SC27-8998-02 V6.2.0 SC27-8998-01 V6.1.5 SC27-8998-00
<i>IBM Copy Services Manager z/OS FlashCopy Manager User's Guide</i>	This guide provides task-oriented information for those who administer FlashCopy® operations in a z/OS® environment.	V6.2.5 SC27-8032-05 V6.2.3 SC27-8032-04 V6.2.2 SC27-8032-03 V6.2.0 SC27-8032-02 V6.1.5 SC27-8032-01 V6.1.3 SC27-8032-00
<i>IBM Copy Services Manager Release Notes</i>	This document contains the release notes in support of IBM Copy Services Manager.	Search on IBM Copy Services Manager at IBM Fix Central (www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral) to locate and download the Release Notes® related to your product version.
<i>IBM Copy Services Manager for z Systems Program Directory and IBM Copy Services Manager Basic Edition for z Systems Program Directory</i>	These program directories are intended for system programmers who are responsible for program installation and maintenance. They contain information about the material and procedures associated with the installation of IBM Copy Services Manager for z Systems® and IBM Copy Services Manager Basic Edition for z Systems.	<i>IBM Copy Services Manager for z Systems Program Directory</i> V6.2.5 GI13-4517-08 V6.2.3 GI13-4517-07 V6.2.2 GI13-4517-06 V6.2.1 GI13-4517-05 V6.2.0 GI13-4517-04 V6.1.4 GI13-4517-03 V6.1.3 GI13-4517-02 V6.1.1 GI13-4517-01 V6.1.0 GI13-4517-00 <i>IBM Copy Services Manager Basic Edition for z Systems Program Directory</i> V6.2.5 GI13-4518-08 V6.2.3 GI13-4518-07 V6.2.2 GI13-4518-06 V6.2.1 GI13-4518-05 V6.2.0 GI13-4518-04 V6.1.4 GI13-4518-03 V6.1.3 GI13-4518-02 V6.1.1 GI13-4518-01 V6.1.0 GI13-4518-00
<i>Program Directory for IBM Copy Services Manager FlashCopy Manager for IBM Copy Services Manager for z Systems</i>	This guide is intended for the system programmer or storage administrator of the IBM Copy Services Manager z/OS FlashCopy Manager utility.	V6.2.5 GI11-2904-08 V6.2.3 GI11-2904-07 V6.2.2 GI11-2904-05 V6.2.1 GI11-2904-04 V6.2.0 GI11-2904-03 V6.1.4 GI11-2904-02 V6.1.3 GI11-2904-01

Table 2. IBM Copy Services Manager product publications (continued)

Title	Description	Order number
IBM DSCLI on z/OS Program Directory	<p>This program directory is intended for system programmers who are responsible for program installation and maintenance.</p> <p>It contains information about the material and procedures associated with the installation of the IBM Copy Services Manager on the DS8000® HMC for access to the DS8000 CLI.</p>	<p>V6.2.5 GI13-3563-05 V6.2.3 GI13-3563-04 V6.2.2 GI13-3563-03 V6.2.1 GI13-3563-02 V6.2.0 GI13-3563-01 V6.1.4 GI13-3563-00</p>

Related websites

View the websites in the following table to get more information about IBM Copy Services Manager.

Table 3. IBM Copy Services Manager related websites

Title	Description
IBM website (ibm.com®)	Find more information about IBM products and services.
IBM Support Portal website(www.ibm.com/support/home)	Find support-related information such as downloads, documentation, troubleshooting, and service requests and PMRs.
Copy Services Manager Support Portal (https://www.ibm.com/support/home/product/10000480/IBM_Copy_Services_Manager)	Find technical support information that is specific to IBM Copy Services Manager.
IBM Directory of Worldwide Contacts website(www.ibm.com/planetwide)	Find contact information for general inquiries, technical support, and hardware and software support by country.
IBM Redbooks® website(www.redbooks.ibm.com/)	Find technical information developed and published by IBM International Technical Support Organization (ITSO).
IBM System Storage® Interoperation Center (SSIC) website (www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic)	Find information about supported host system models, operating systems, adapters, and switches.
IBM Fix Central (www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral)	Find fixes and updates for your system's software, hardware, and operating system.

Sending comments

Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and highest quality information.

Procedure

To submit any comments about this publication or any other IBM storage product documentation:

Send your comments by email to starpubs@us.ibm.com. Be sure to include the following information:

- Exact publication title and version
- Publication form number (for example, GA32-1234-00)
- Page, table, or illustration numbers that you are commenting on
- A detailed description of any information that should be changed

Contacting IBM Software Support

You can contact IBM Software Support by phone, and you can register for support notifications at the technical support website.

- Go to the Copy Services Manager technical support website at Copy Services Manager Support Portal (https://www.ibm.com/support/home/product/10000480/IBM_Copy_Services_Manager).

To receive future support notifications, sign in under **Subscribe to support notifications**. You are required to enter your IBM ID and password. After you are authenticated, you can configure your subscription for Copy Services Manager technical support website updates.

You can also review the *IBM Software Support Handbook*, which is available at <http://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/handbook/home.html>.

The support website offers extensive information, including a guide to support services; frequently asked questions (FAQs); and documentation for all IBM Software products, including Redbooks and white papers. Translated documents are also available for some products.

When you contact IBM Software Support, be prepared to provide identification information for your company so that support personnel can readily assist you. Company identification information might also be needed to access various online services available on the website. See “Reporting a problem.”

Reporting a problem

Provide the IBM Support Center with information about the problems that you report.

Have the following information ready when you report a problem:

- The IBM Copy Services Manager version, release, modification, and service level number.
- The communication protocol (for example, TCP/IP), version, and release number that you are using.
- The activity that you were doing when the problem occurred, listing the steps that you followed before the problem occurred.
- The job log output for any failing IBM Copy Services Manager jobs.
- The exact text of any error messages.

Summary of changes

The following functions are introduced in IBM Copy Services Manager Version 6.2.5:

Version 6, Release 2, Modification 5

This table provides the current technical changes and enhancements to Copy Services Manager as of March 2019.

Table 4. Summary of changes in Copy Services Manager Version 6.2.5 (March 2019)

Function or feature	Description
New parameter	The saf parameter was added to “csmcli” on page 46, which allows authorized users to bypass the login prompt when starting a session.
New commands	<p>Two new commands were added for the new dual control feature.</p> <p>Dual Control provides added security by requiring secondary approval to process certain actions within Copy Services Manager.</p> <p>The two new dual control commands are “lsdcrequests” on page 77 and “dcrequestaction” on page 49.</p>

Chapter 1. Customizing the command-line interface

This information describes how to customize the command-line interface.

Configuring the command-line interface

This information describes how to modify the properties files to configure the command-line interface.

Before you begin

Note: For information on starting the command-line interface program, see the **csmdi** command.

About this task

There are three properties files that are used to configure the command-line interface:

repcli.properties

Contains the server and port information used to communicate with the IBM Copy Services Manager server and the command-line interface.

rmserver.properties

Contains configuration information about logging.

csmdi-auth.properties

Contains authorization information for signing on to the CLI automatically without entering your user name and password.

Setting up automatic login to the CLI

You can set up the command-line interface to automatically log you in without specifying your user name or password each time you issue a **csmdi** command or enter the **csmdi** shell. Use the **csmdi-auth.properties** file to create a persistent copy of the user name and encrypted password that is used for automatic authentication and authorization.

Procedure

Complete these steps to set up automatic login authentication:

1. Locate the **csmdi-auth.properties** template file. The template is in the following directories, depending on the operating system.

Note: You can also place the file in the home directory to support different users being able to log in from the same server.

Operating system	Default directory
z/OS	<i>path_prefix</i> /opt/IBM/CSM/CLI
Windows	c:\Program Files\IBM\CSM\CLI
Linux or AIX	<i>path_prefix</i> /CLI

2. Edit this file to include your user name and password.

3. Issue a **csmdi** command or enter the **csmdi** shell. The password is encrypted in the `csmdi-auth.properties` file.

Chapter 2. csmcli command descriptions

The following table provides a brief description and authorization role for each command in the command-line interface.

Sessions and copy sets

Command	Description	Roles
"chsess" on page 23	Use the chsess command to change the description or properties for an existing session. If you want to change the session type, you must delete the session and create another session.	Administrator Operator
"cmdsess" on page 39	Use the cmdsess command to run a specific action against a session.	Administrator Operator
"csmcli" on page 46	The csmcli command is the Copy Services Manager command-line interface (CLI) program. This command can be used either on its own, using the associated options and arguments, or interactively by starting csmcli with no parameters or arguments to start an interactive session.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"dcrequestaction" on page 49	Use the dcrequestaction command to run a specified scheduled task. Tip: To list all of the Dual Control requests, use the lsdcrequests command.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"exportcsv" on page 50	Use the exportcsv command to export the copy sets in a session to a comma-separated values (CSV) file or to the console. You are prompted to overwrite the CSV file if it exists.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"importcsv" on page 55	Use the importcsv command to parse a comma-separated values (CSV) file to create copy sets for a session.	Administrator
"lsbackups" on page 62	Use the lsbackups command to display the backups for a specified session and role.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsbackupvols" on page 64	Use the lsbackupvols command to display the volumes included in a given backup for the specified session and role.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lscpset" on page 66	Use the lscpset command to list the IDs and number of volumes for the copy sets that are in a session.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lscptypes" on page 69	Use the lscptypes command to display the session types and the storage systems that you can use with the session types.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsdcrequests" on page 77	Use the lsdcrequests command to display all Dual Control requests created by or requiring approval from the current user.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lspair" on page 93	Use the lspair command to list the copy pairs for a specified role pair or to list the copy pairs for a specified copy set.	Administrator Operator Monitor

Command	Description	Roles
"lsparameter" on page 97	Use the lsparameter command to list Metro Mirror heartbeat setting.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsrolepairs" on page 104	Use the lsrolepairs command to display role pairs in a session.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsrolescset" on page 108	Use the lsrolescset command to list the volume roles in the specified session.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsess" on page 109	Use the lsess command to display sessions and their status.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsessactions" on page 113	Use the lsessactions command to list all the session actions (commands) that can be run for a session.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsessdetails" on page 115	Use the lsessdetails command to display the details of a session.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"mkcpset" on page 136	Use the mkcpset command to create copy sets.	Administrator Operator
"mkssess" on page 144	Use the mkssess command to create a session.	Administrator Operator
"rmcpset" on page 153	Use the rmcpset command to remove a copy set.	Administrator Operator
"rmssess" on page 159	Use the rmssess command to remove a session.	Administrator Operator
"setparameter" on page 164	Use the setparameter command to set the system parameters.	Administrator
"setrolepaircg" on page 165	Use the setrolepaircg command to assign a specific user defined consistency group name to a role pair.	Administrator Operator
"showcpset" on page 167	Use the showcpset command to display properties for a copy set.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"showsess" on page 180	Use the showsess command to display properties for a selected session, including name, description, group managed, and copy type.	Administrator Operator Monitor

Storage systems and connections

Command	Description	Roles
"adddevice" on page 8	Use the adddevice command to add a storage system.	Administrator
"addemailalert" on page 11	Use the addemailalert command to add e-mail addresses to the list of e-mail addresses to receive e-mail alerts.	Administrator
"addemailserver" on page 12	Use the addemailserver command to add or change the SMTP server configuration used to send e-mail alerts.	Administrator

Command	Description	Roles
"addmc" on page 14	Use the addmc command to add a management console connection and all the storage systems that are managed by that management console.	Administrator
"addstorsys" on page 15	Use the addstorsys command to add a specific storage system and its volumes that are attached through a z/OS connection to the copy services management server configuration	Administrator
"chdevice" on page 17	Use the chdevice command to change user names and passwords for storage systems.	Administrator
"chlocation" on page 21	Use the chlocation command to change the location associated with the specified storage systems.	Administrator
"chmc" on page 22	Use the chmc command to set or change the hardware credentials for the hardware management console (HMC).	Administrator
"chsystem" on page 36	Use the chsystem command to make changes to system settings files for the server. The server may need to be restarted for changes to take effect. Note: This command can only be issued by a user with Administrator authority.	Administrator
"chvol" on page 37	Use the chvol command to change the protection setting for a volume. You cannot change the protection setting for a volume that is in a session.	Administrator
"lsavailports" on page 60	Use the lsavailports command to display the port configuration types for a specific path.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsdevice" on page 73	Use the lsdevice command to list storage systems and properties.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lslocation" on page 87	Use the lslocation command to list all defined locations.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lslss" on page 89	Use the lslss command to list the logical subsystems (LSSes) for the specified DS or ESS storage system. You can use this output with the mkpath command.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsmc" on page 91	Use the lsmc command to display a summary of management consoles and settings.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lspath" on page 99	Use the lspath command to display paths between ESS and DS devices. You can then use this information for a remote copy.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lspool" on page 102	Use the lspool command to list pools that are on FlashSystems/IBM Spectrum Accelerate.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsstorcandidate" on page 125	Use the lsstorcandidate command to list the storage systems that can be discovered through an IBM z/OS connection. This command does not list storage systems that are already added to the copy services management server configuration.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsvol" on page 129	Use the lsvol command to display detailed information about volumes.	Administrator Operator Monitor

Command	Description	Roles
"mkdevicedump" on page 140	Use the mkdevicedump command to collect diagnostic information on a storage device. The only storage devices currently supported by this command are DS8000 devices using an HMC connection. Users with administrator authority who have administrator or service authorization on the HMC can issue mkdevicedump through the HMC connection.	Administrator
"mkpath" on page 143	Use the mkpath command to create a Fibre Channel path or paths between a source logical subsystem (LSS) and a target LSS.	Administrator Operator
"rmdevice" on page 154	Use the rmdevice command to remove a direct connection to a storage system.	Administrator
"rmmc" on page 158	Use the rmmc command to remove a management console.	Administrator
"rmpath" on page 158	Use the rmpath command to remove a path or paths between a source logical subsystem (LSS) and a target LSS.	Administrator Operator
"rmstorsys" on page 161	Use the rmstorsys command to remove a specific storage system and its volumes connected through a z/OS connection to the copy services management server configuration.	Administrator
"showdevice" on page 169	Use the showdevice command to display storage system properties.	Administrator
"showmc" on page 179	Use the showmc command to display the properties of a management console.	Administrator

Management servers

Command	Description	Roles
"hareconnect" on page 53	Use the hareconnect command to reconnect the active and standby servers for high availability (HA).	Administrator
"hatakeover" on page 54	Use the hatakeover command to change the standby server to the active server.	Administrator
"lshaservers" on page 82	Use the lshaservers command to show the status of each active and standby management server.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lssnmp" on page 124	Use the lssnmp command to list the SNMP managers to which the copy services management server is configured to send SNMP alerts.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lstasks" on page 127	Use the lstasks command to display a list of scheduled tasks.	Administrator
"mkbackup" on page 135	Use the mkbackup command to create a backup of the configuration data (including storage systems, sessions, and copy sets) in the zero-administration embedded repository.	Administrator
"mklogpkg" on page 142	Use the mklogpkg command to create a log package. The log package is written to the file that is specified in the <i>csm_install_directory\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties\Diagnostics.properties</i> file.	Administrator

Command	Description	Roles
"mksnmp" on page 147	Use the mksnmp command to add a specified manager to the list of servers to which SNMP traps are sent. SNMP traps are not specific to any particular session. All traps for any session are sent to each server.	Administrator
"rmactive" on page 150	Use the rmactive command to remove an active management server.	Administrator
"rmsnmp" on page 160	Use the rmsnmp command to remove the specified manager from the list of servers to which SNMP traps are sent.	Administrator
"rmstdby" on page 161	Use the rmstdby command to remove a standby management server.	Administrator
"runtask" on page 163	Use the runtask command to run a specified scheduled task.	Administrator
"setasstdby" on page 164	Use the setasstdby command to set a management server to be the standby management server of another active management server.	Administrator
"setstdby" on page 166	Use the setstdby command to set the standby management server for an active management server.	Administrator
"showha" on page 175	Use the showha command to display the high-availability status.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"ver" on page 185	Use the ver command to display the current version of IBM Copy Services Manager.	Administrator Operator Monitor

Security

Command	Description	Roles
"chauth" on page 16	Use the chauth command to change the authorization level of a user.	Administrator
"chuser" on page 37	Use the chuser command to change the password for a user in the basic user registry.	Operator
"lsauth" on page 56	Use the lsauth command to list the name, authorization level, and session permission for each user or user group.	Administrator Operator Monitor
"lsauthcfg" on page 58	Use the lsauthcfg command to show the configuration being used for server base authentication, if any.	Administrator
"mkadcfg" on page 133	Use the mkadcfg command to configure the Active Directory server-based authentication.	Administrator
"mkauth" on page 134	Use the mkauth command to grant monitor, administrator, user administrator, or operator authorization to a user. (This command will not remove authorization for an existing user.)	Administrator
"mkldapcfg" on page 141	Use the mkldapcfg command to configure an LDAP server based authentication.	Administrator
"mkuser" on page 148	Use the mkuser command to create a user in the basic user registry.	Administrator

Command	Description	Roles
"rmauth" on page 152	Use the rmauth command to remove monitor, administrator, or operator authorization from an LDAP user or user group. Note: The rmauth command is only for LDAP users and groups. To remove users from the basic user registry, you must use "rmuser" on page 162.	Administrator
"rmauthcfg" on page 152	Use the rmauthcfg command to remove the LDAP configuration from being used from user authentication.	Administrator
"rmuser" on page 162	Use the rmuser command to remove a user from the basic user registry.	Administrator
"syncauthservice" on page 183	Use the syncauthservice command to synchronize certificates from the authentication service to the authentication service of another server. For change to take effect, csmAuth needs to be restarted on the destination server.	Administrator
"whoami" on page 186	Use the whoami command to show the name of the user that is logged on.	Administrator Operator Monitor

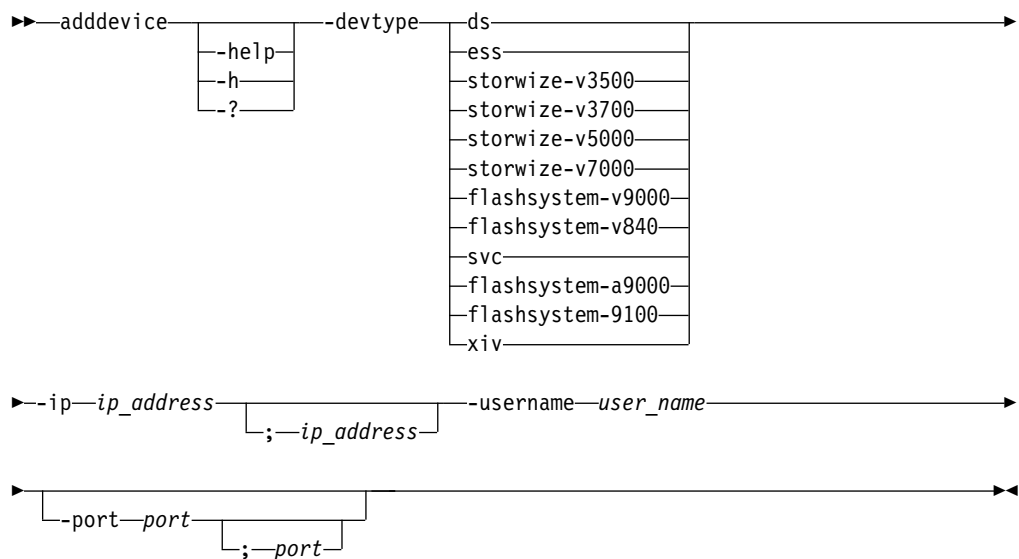
adddevice

Use the **adddevice** command to add a storage system.

To add a storage system that is attached through an IBM z/OS connection, use the **addstorsys** command.

To change the location of a storage system, use the **chlocation** command.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-devtype { ds | ess | storwize-v3500 | storwize-v3700 | storwize-v5000 | storwize-v7000 | flashsystem-v9000 | flashsystem-v840 | svc | flashsystem-a9000 | flashsystem-9100 | xiv }

Specifies the type of storage system. The following list shows the parameter values and the storage systems that they represent.

- ds: IBM DS8000
- ess: IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server® Model 800
- storwize-v3500: IBM Storwize® V3500
- storwize-v3700: IBM Storwize V3700
- storwize-v5000: IBM Storwize V5000
- storwize-v7000: IBM Storwize V7000 or IBM Storwize V7000 Unified
- flashsystem-v9000: IBM FlashSystem V9000
- flashsystem-v840: IBM FlashSystem V840
- svc: IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller
- flashsystem-a9000: IBM FlashSystem A9000
- flashsystem-9100: IBM FlashSystem 9100
- xiv: FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

-ip *ip_address*[:*ip_address*]

Specifies the IP address or host name of the clusters or nodes that are used by the storage system.

The following storage systems use two clusters. You must specify the IP address or host name for each cluster by using a semicolon between the addresses (for example, 192.0.2.0;192.0.2.1):

- TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- IBM DS8000

The following storage systems use one node and require only one address or host name:

- SAN Volume Controller
- Storwize V3500
- Storwize V3700
- Storwize V5000
- Storwize V7000
- Storwize V7000 Unified
- FlashSystem V9000
- FlashSystem V840
- FlashSystem A9000
- FlashSystem A9000
- FlashSystem 9100

The XIV and FlashSystem A9000 use multiple nodes. Specify the IP address or host name for one node and the remaining nodes are discovered automatically.

-username *user_name*[:*user_name*]

Specifies the user name for the clusters or nodes.

For the following storage systems, you can provide one user name, which is used for both clusters, or you can specify two user names. If you have separate user names, include a semicolon between the user name for cluster 0 and cluster 1.

- TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- IBM DS8000

For the following storage systems, provide one user name:

- SAN Volume Controller
- Storwize V3500
- Storwize V3700
- Storwize V5000
- Storwize V7000
- Storwize V7000 Unified
- FlashSystem V9000
- FlashSystem V840
- FlashSystem A9000
- FlashSystem 9100
- FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

Important: After you enter the parameters for the **adddevice** command, you are prompted to enter the password for this user name. The password is not displayed in the command window.

-port *port[:port]*

Specifies the port to use for accessing the clusters or nodes.

For the following storage systems, you can provide one port number, which is used for both clusters, or you can provide two port numbers. If you have separate port numbers, include a semicolon between the port for cluster 0 and cluster 1. The default port number is 2433.

- TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- IBM DS8000

For the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate, provide one port number, which is used for all nodes. The default port number is 7778.

The following storage systems do not require this parameter.

- SAN Volume Controller
- Storwize V3500
- Storwize V3700
- Storwize V5000
- Storwize V7000
- Storwize V7000 Unified
- FlashSystem V9000
- FlashSystem V840
- FlashSystem A9000
- FlashSystem 9100
- FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

Example: Adding a storage system

The following command adds a TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage system.

```
csmcli> adddevice -devtype ess -ip sts596c0;sts596c1 -username admin
```

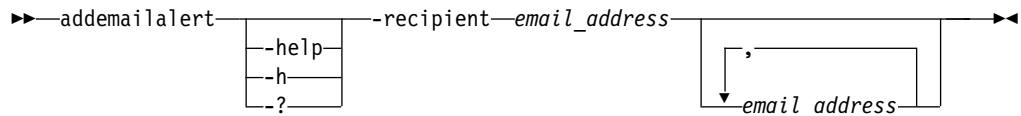
The following output is returned:

```
Please enter a password for the device cluster 0 userid of admin:
IWNH1612I The connection sts596c0:sts596c1 was successfully added.
```

addemailalert

Use the **addemailalert** command to add e-mail addresses to the list of e-mail addresses to receive e-mail alerts.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-recipient email_address[,email_address]

Specifies the e-mail addresses to be added to the alert recipient list. Multiple e-mail addresses can be added using a comma separated list.

Example: Adding an e-mail address to the alert recipient list

```
csmcli> addemailalert -recipient user@us.ibm.com
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1720I [Apr 12, 2016 10:05:41 AM] The e-mail recipient list
has been updated.
```

```
IWNR1724I [Apr 12, 2016 10:05:41 AM] The e-mail recipient user@us.ibm.com
has been added.
```

Example: Adding multiple e-mail addresses to the alert recipient list

```
csmcli> addemailalert -recipient user1@us.ibm.com,user2@us.ibm.com
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1720I [Apr 12, 2016 10:07:48 AM] The e-mail recipient list has been updated.
```

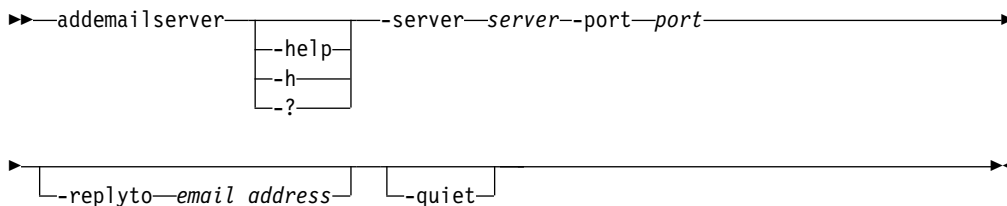
```
IWNR1724I [Apr 12, 2016 10:07:48 AM] The e-mail recipient user1@us.ibm.com
has been added.
```

```
IWNR1724I [Apr 12, 2016 10:07:48 AM] The e-mail recipient user2@us.ibm.com
has been added.
```

addemailserver

Use the **addemailserver** command to add or change the SMTP server configuration used to send e-mail alerts.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-server *server*

Specifies the SMTP server ip address or hostname. This will be the SMTP server used to send e-mail alerts to.

-port *port*

Specifies a port number to use for the SMTP server. If not specified, the default port is 25. Valid ports are from 1 to 65535.

-replyto *email_address*

Specifies the e-mail addresses to be used as the reply-to e-mail address on e-mail alerts sent. If not specified then no reply-to e-mail address will be used.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Example: Adding an SMTP server for e-mail alerts

```
csmdi> addemailserver -server na.relay.ibm.com -port 25
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1728I [Apr 14, 2016 4:17:34 PM] The SMTP server configuration has been updated.  
IWNR1710I [Apr 14, 2016 4:17:34 PM] Configured SMTP server na.relay.ibm.com:25.
```

Example: Adding an SMTP server for e-mail alerts with a reply-to e-mail address

```
csmdi> addemailserver -server na.relay.ibm.com -replyto user@us.ibm.com
```

The following output is returned:

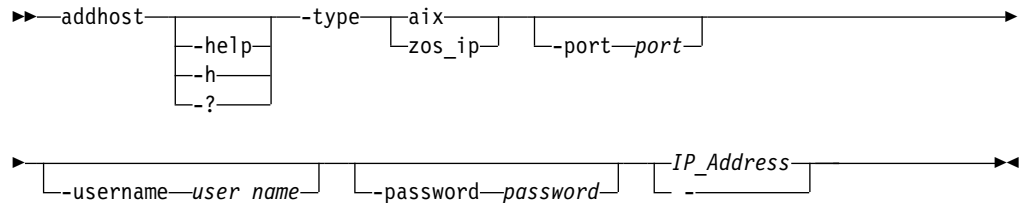
```
IWNR1728I [Apr 14, 2016 4:20:16 PM] The SMTP server configuration has been updated.  
IWNR1710I [Apr 14, 2016 4:20:16 PM] Configured SMTP server na.relay.ibm.com:25.  
IWNR1714I [Apr 14, 2016 4:20:16 PM] The reply-to e-mail address was set to  
user@us.ibm.com.
```

addhost

Use the **addhost** command to add AIX or IBM z/OS host system connections to the copy services management server.

For z/OS host systems, this command is required only if you are connecting to the host system by using an IP address or host name. If the copy services management server is installed on the z/OS host system, the host system connection is automatically added. This connection is referred to as the native z/OS connection.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-type { aix | zos_ip }

Specifies the type of host system: AIX or z/OS.

-username *user_name*

Specifies the user name for a z/OS host system. This parameter is required to connect to a z/OS host.

-password *password*

Specifies the password for a z/OS host system. This parameter is required to connect to a z/OS host. If you do not include this parameter, you are prompted for the password. However, the password is not displayed in the command window.

-port *port*

Specifies the port to use to access the host system, if other than the default port. If a port is not specified, the default port is 5858 for z/OS and 9930 for AIX.

IP_Address | **-**

Specifies the IP address or host name of the host system.

Alternatively, use the dash (**-**) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Adding an AIX host system

The following command adds an AIX host system with the IP address 192.0.2.0. In this example, you could omit the **-port** parameter because port 9930 is the default.

```
csmcli> addhost -type aix -port 9930 192.0.2.0
```

Example: Adding a z/OS host system

The following command adds a z/OS host system with the IP address 192.0.2.1.

```
csmdi> addhost -type zos -username abcuser 192.0.2.1
```

The following output is returned:

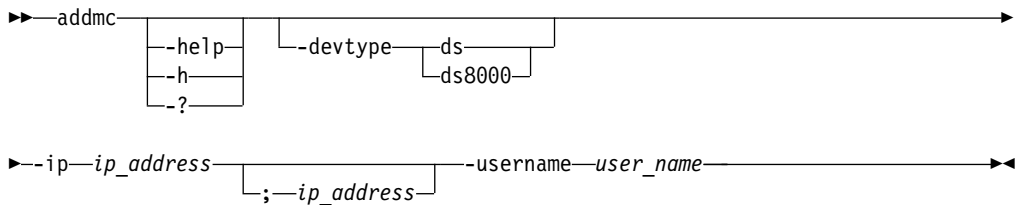
Please enter a password for the host userid of abcuser:

IWNRR7000I Connection 192.0.2.1 added successfully.

addmc

Use the **addmc** command to add a management console connection and all the storage systems that are managed by that management console.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-devtype { ds | ds8000 }

Specifies the type of hardware device. You can specify either ds or ds8000.

-ip ip_address[;ip_address]

Specifies the IP addresses of the management consoles to be added. For dual-management console configurations, both IP addresses must be specified with a semicolon in between (for example, 192.0.2.0;192.0.2.1).

-username user_name

Specifies the user name for the management console. For dual management console configurations, the management consoles must have the same user name.

Important: After you enter the parameters for the **addmc** command, you are prompted to enter the password for this user name. For security, the password is not displayed in the command window.

Example: Adding a management console

The following command adds a management console.

```
csmdi> addmc -devtype ds -ip 127.0.0.1 -username admin
```

The following output is returned:

Please enter a password for the device userid of admin:

IWNH1612I The connection HMC:127.0.0.1 was successfully added.

addstorsys

Use the **addstorsys** command to add a specific storage system and its volumes that are attached through a z/OS connection to the copy services management server configuration.

Syntax

```
➤—addstorsys—┐—conntype—zos—-dev—device_id—➤
                └─help─┘
                └─h───┘
                └─?───┘
```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-conntype zos

Specifies the type of connection that the storage system uses. Currently, you can specify only **zos** for a z/OS connection.

-dev device_id

Specifies the ID of the DS or ESS storage system that is to be added to the configuration.

Tip: Use the **lsdevice** command to display a list of valid storage system IDs.

Description

Important:

- You must have Administrator privileges to run this command.
- You can run this command only from the copy services management server that is installed on a system that is running z/OS.
- You can use this command to add only DS and ESS type storage systems.

If the storage system has been previously added through another connection type, then z/OS is added to the connection types for the storage system.

To add a storage system that is attached through a direct connection, use the **adddevice** command. To add a storage system that is attached through a hardware-management-console (HMC) connection, use the **addmc** command.

To change the location of the storage system, use the **chlocation** command.

Example: Adding an ESS storage system

This example illustrates how to add the storage system with ID ESS:BOX:2105.12345 to the configuration through the z/OS connection.

```
csmcli> addstorsys -dev ESS:BOX:2105.12345 -conntype zos
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNH1612I The connection ESS:BOX:2105.12345 was successfully added.
```

Example: Adding a DS8000 storage system

This example illustrates how to add the storage system with ID DS8000:BOX:2107.MV492 to the configuration through the z/OS connection.

```
csmcli> addstorsys -dev DS8000:BOX:2107.MV492 -conntype zos
```

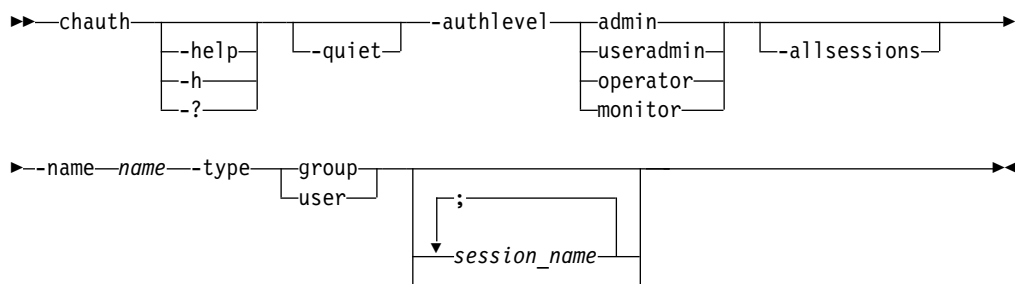
The following output is returned:

```
IWNH1619I The storage device 2107.MV492 at ZOS was successfully added.
```

chauth

Use the **chauth** command to change the authorization level of a user.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-authlevel admin | useradmin | operator | monitor

Specifies the new authorization level. You can specify one of these authorization levels: admin, useradmin, operator, or monitor.

-allsessions

When **authlevel** is set to operator, this option indicates that the user will be authorized to manage all existing and future sessions. When set all session names specified will be ignored. The option will be ignored for all other **authlevel** values.

-name name

Specifies a user ID or group name for which you are changing the authorization level.

-type group | user

Specifies whether authorization is to be changed for a user group or user.

session_name | -

Use this optional parameter when you are assigning operator authorization to a user and want to specify one or more sessions to which the operator has access. This parameter does not apply to monitors, user administrators, or administrators.

To specify multiple sessions, use a semicolon (;) to separate the session names.

If you specify **-authlevel operator** but do not specify a session name, the user is not granted operator status to any of the existing sessions but is granted permission to create new sessions.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). You can specify multiple session names from **stdin** when the dash (-) is specified. The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Changing user authorization to session operator

The following command changes the authorization level for the user `csmuser` to operator privileges with permission to manage session `session1`.

```
csmcli> chauth -name csmuser -type user -authlevel operator session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to change access for user csmuser? [y/n]:y
IWNR4016I Successfully granted the session operator role to csmuser.
```

```
IWNR4026I Successfully granted permission for session session1 for
user csmuser.
```

Example: Changing user authorization to monitor privileges

The following command changes the authorization level for the user named `guest` to monitor privileges.

```
csmcli> chauth -name guest -type user -authlevel monitor
```

The following output is returned:

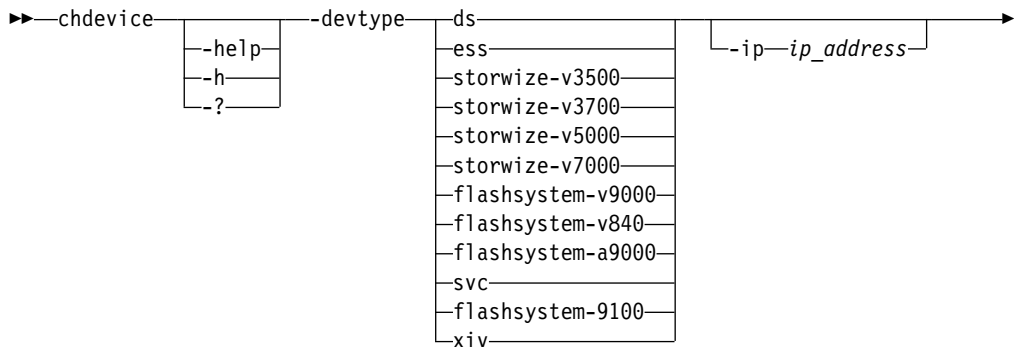
```
Are you sure you want to change access for user guest? [y/n]:y
IWNR4017I Successfully granted the monitor role to guest.
```

chdevice

Use the **chdevice** command to change user names and passwords for storage systems.

Tip: To change the location of storage systems, use the **chlocation** command.

Syntax



```

▶--username—user_name—┐
                        └--password—password—┘

```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-devtype { ds | ess | storwize-v3500 | storwize-v3700 | storwize-v5000 | storwize-v7000 | flashsystem-v9000 | flashsystem-v840 | svc | flashsystem-a9000 | flashsystem-9100 | xiv }

Specifies the type of storage system. The parameter values are:

- ds: IBM DS8000
- ess: IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- storwize-v3500: IBM Storwize V3500
- storwize-v3700: IBM Storwize V3700
- storwize-v5000: IBM Storwize V5000
- storwize-v7000: IBM Storwize V7000 or IBM Storwize V7000 Unified
- flashsystem-v9000: IBM FlashSystem V9000
- flashsystem-v840: IBM FlashSystem V840
- svc: IBM SAN Volume Controller
- flashsystem-a9000: IBM FlashSystem A9000
- flashsystem-9100: IBM FlashSystem 9100
- xiv: FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

-ip *ip_address* [;*ip_address*]

Specifies the IP address or host name of the clusters or nodes that are used by the storage system.

The following storage systems use two clusters. You must specify the IP address or host name for each cluster by using a semicolon between the addresses (for example, 192.0.2.0;192.0.2.1):

- TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- IBM DS8000

The following storage systems use one node and require only one address or host name:

- SAN Volume Controller
- Storwize V3500
- Storwize V3700
- Storwize V5000
- Storwize V7000
- Storwize V7000 Unified
- FlashSystem V9000
- FlashSystem V840
- FlashSystem 9100

The XIV and FlashSystem A9000 use multiple nodes. Specify the IP address or host name for one node and the remaining nodes are discovered automatically.

Tip: To list the IP address of storage system clusters or nodes, use the **lsdevice** command.

-username *user_name* [*;user_name*]**

Specifies the user name for the clusters or nodes that are used by the storage system. Enter the user name or user names that you want to change. If you want to change passwords associated with user names (but not the user names), enter the currently valid user names.

For the following storage systems, you can provide one user name, which is used for both clusters, or you can specify two user names. If you have separate user names, include a semicolon between the user name for cluster 0 and cluster 1.

- TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- IBM DS8000

For the following storage systems, provide one user name:

- SAN Volume Controller
- Storwize V3500
- Storwize V3700
- Storwize V5000
- Storwize V7000
- Storwize V7000 Unified
- FlashSystem V9000
- FlashSystem V840
- FlashSystem A9000
- FlashSystem 9100
- FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

-password *password* [*;password*]**

Specifies the passwords for the user names. If you want to change user names, but do not want to change the passwords that are associated with the user names, enter the current passwords. If you do not include this parameter, you are prompted for the passwords.

Example: Changing user names and passwords

The following command shows how to change the IP address or host name and port number for a host system connection. The following output is returned:

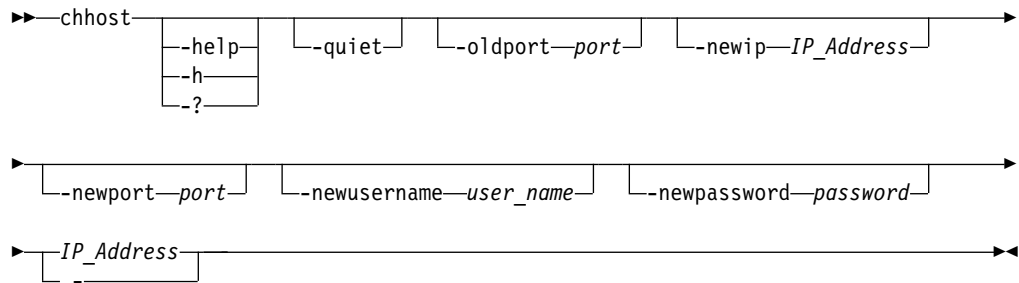
```
Please enter a password for the device cluster 0 userid of admin:
IWNH1613I User profile information for the storage device at
ds8kboxc0.domain.company.com;ds8kboxc1.domain.company.com was successfully updated.
```

chhost

Use the **chhost** command to change the connection information for host systems that are connected to the copy services management server.

For z/OS host systems, this command is applicable only if the copy services management server is connected to the host system by using an IP address or host name.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-oldport port

Specifies the old port number for the host system connection to be modified.

-newip IP_Address

Specifies the new IP address or host name of the host system connection to be modified.

-newport port

Specifies the new port number for the host system connection to be modified.

-newusername user_name

Specifies the new user name for the IBM z/OS host system connection to be modified.

-newpassword password

Specifies the new password for the z/OS host system connection to be modified.

IP_Address | -

Specifies the IP address or host name of the host system connection to be modified.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Changing an AIX host system credentials

The following command changes the IP address and port number for an AIX host system connection.

```
csmdi> cshost -oldport 9930 -newip 192.0.2.2 -newport 9931 192.0.2.0
```

Example: Changing a z/OS host system credentials

The following command changes the user name for a z/OS host system connection.

```
csmdi> cshost -oldport 5858 -newusername xyzuser 192.0.2.1
```

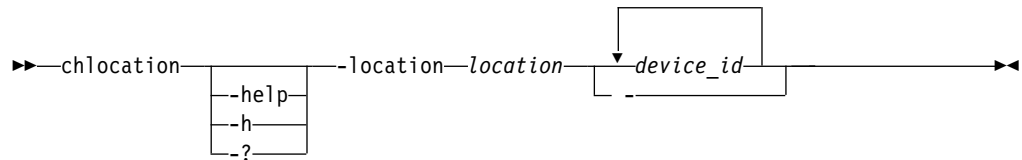
The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to change the host 192.0.2.1? [y/n]:y
Please enter a password for the host userid of xyzuser:
IWN7005I Update to connection 192.0.2.1:5858 successful.
```

chlocation

Use the **chlocation** command to change the location associated with the specified storage systems.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-location *location*

Specifies the location to associate with the specified storage systems. The location can be up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

***device_id...* | -**

Specifies the ID of one or more storage systems whose location is to be changed, separated by a space.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Tip: Use the **lsdevice** command to list the valid storage system IDs.

Description

Important: You must have Administrator privileges to run this command.

To list the locations that have already been associated with storage systems, use the **lslocation** command.

Example: Changing the location of multiple storage systems

The following command changes the location of multiple storage systems to Tucson.

```
csmdi> chlocation -location Tucson ESS:BOX:2105.18596 DS8000:BOX:2107.NK791
```

The following output is returned:

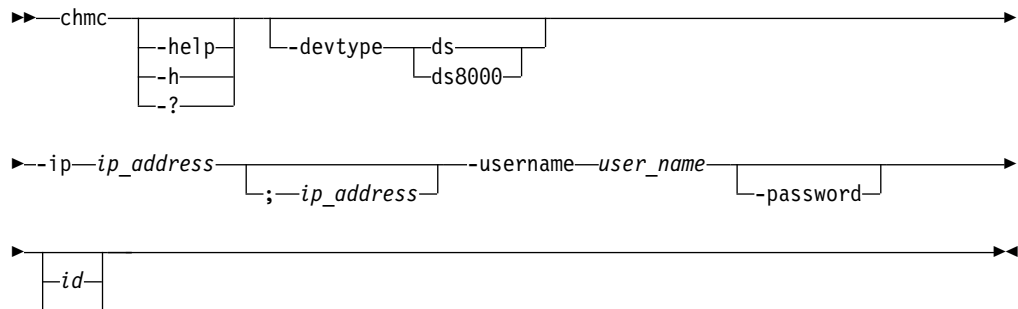
```
IWNH1222I The site location for storage system ESS:BOX:2105.18596
was successfully changed to Tucson.
```

```
IWNH1222I The site location for storage system DS8000:BOX:2107.NK791 was
successfully changed to Tucson.
```

chmc

Use the **chmc** command to set or change the hardware credentials for the hardware management console (HMC).

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-devtype ds | ds8000

Specifies the hardware type.

-ip ip_address [;ip_address]

Specifies the IP addresses of the primary and secondary management consoles. For single HMC configurations only one IP address is necessary. For dual HMC configurations, two IP addresses must be specified separated with a semicolon (;).

-username user_name

Specifies the user names of the management console.

-password

Prompts you for a new password for the device.

id | -

Specifies the ID of the management console to change.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Tip: Use the **lsmc** command to list the management console IDs.

Description

To change the location of a storage system behind a HMC connection, use the **chlocation** command.

Example: Changing hardware credentials

The following command changes the user name and password for the HMC with ID HMC:127.0.0.1 and IP address 9.11.222.33.

```
csmcli> chmc -devtype ds -ip 127.0.0.1 -username admin -password HMC:127.0.0.1
```

The following output is returned:

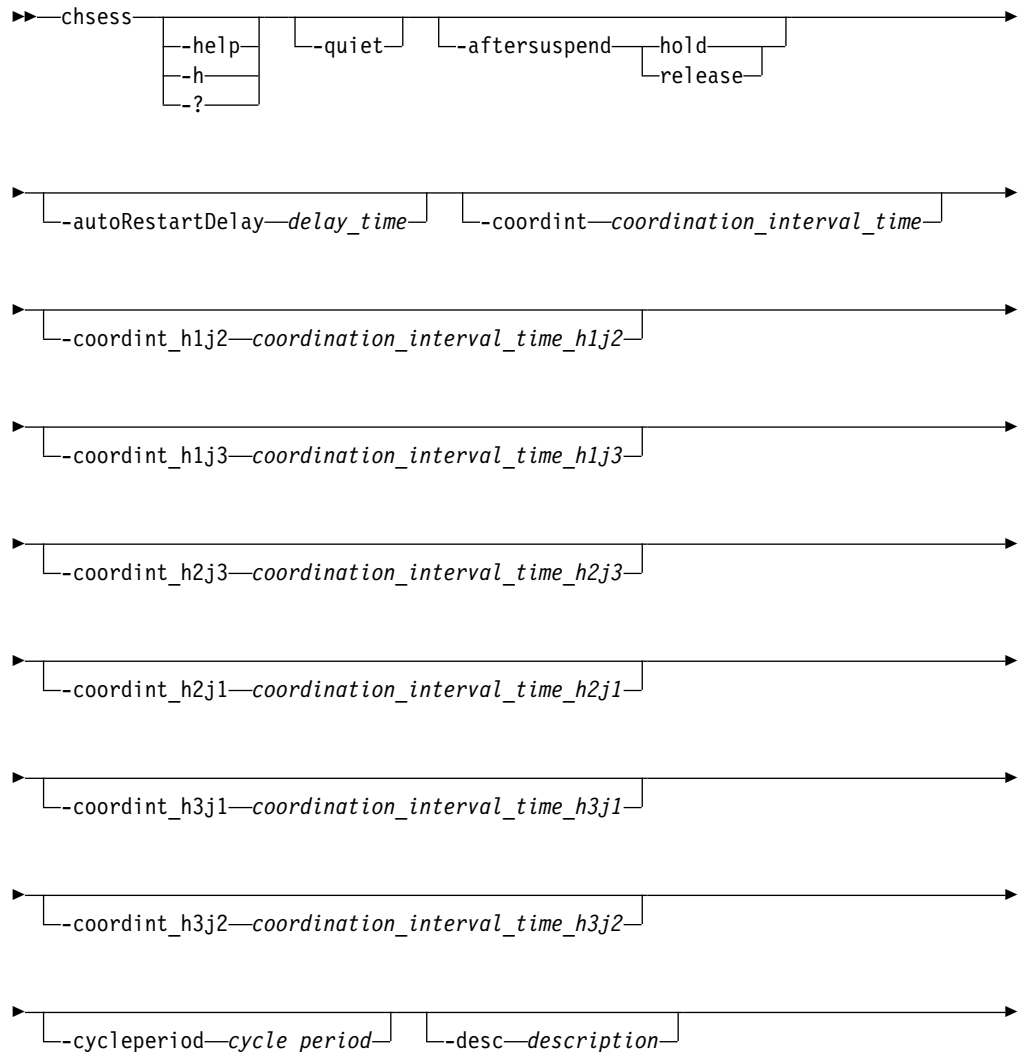
```
Please enter a password for the device userid of admin: *****
IWNH1613I  User profile information for the storage device at HMC:127.0.0.1
was successfully updated.
```

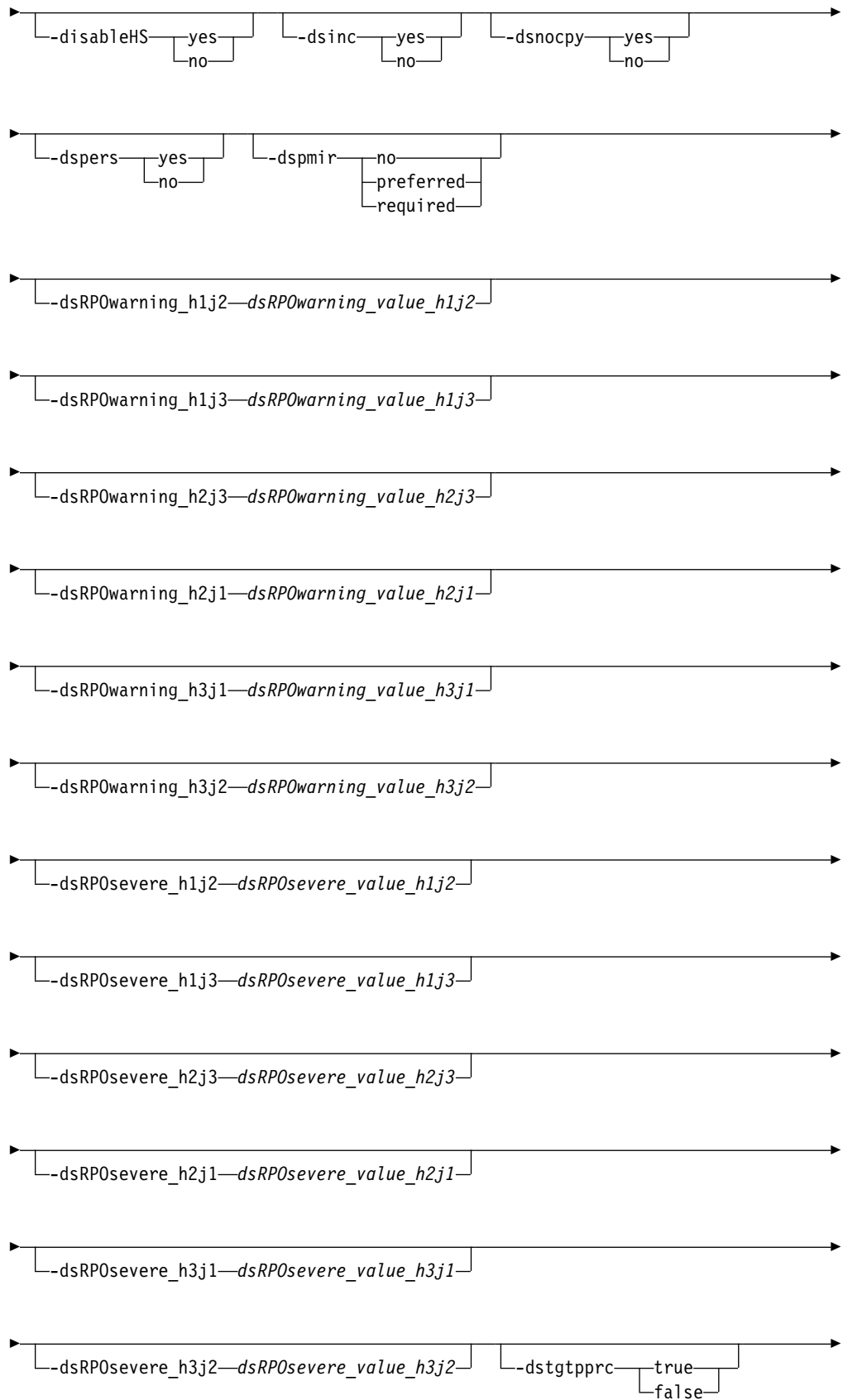
chsess

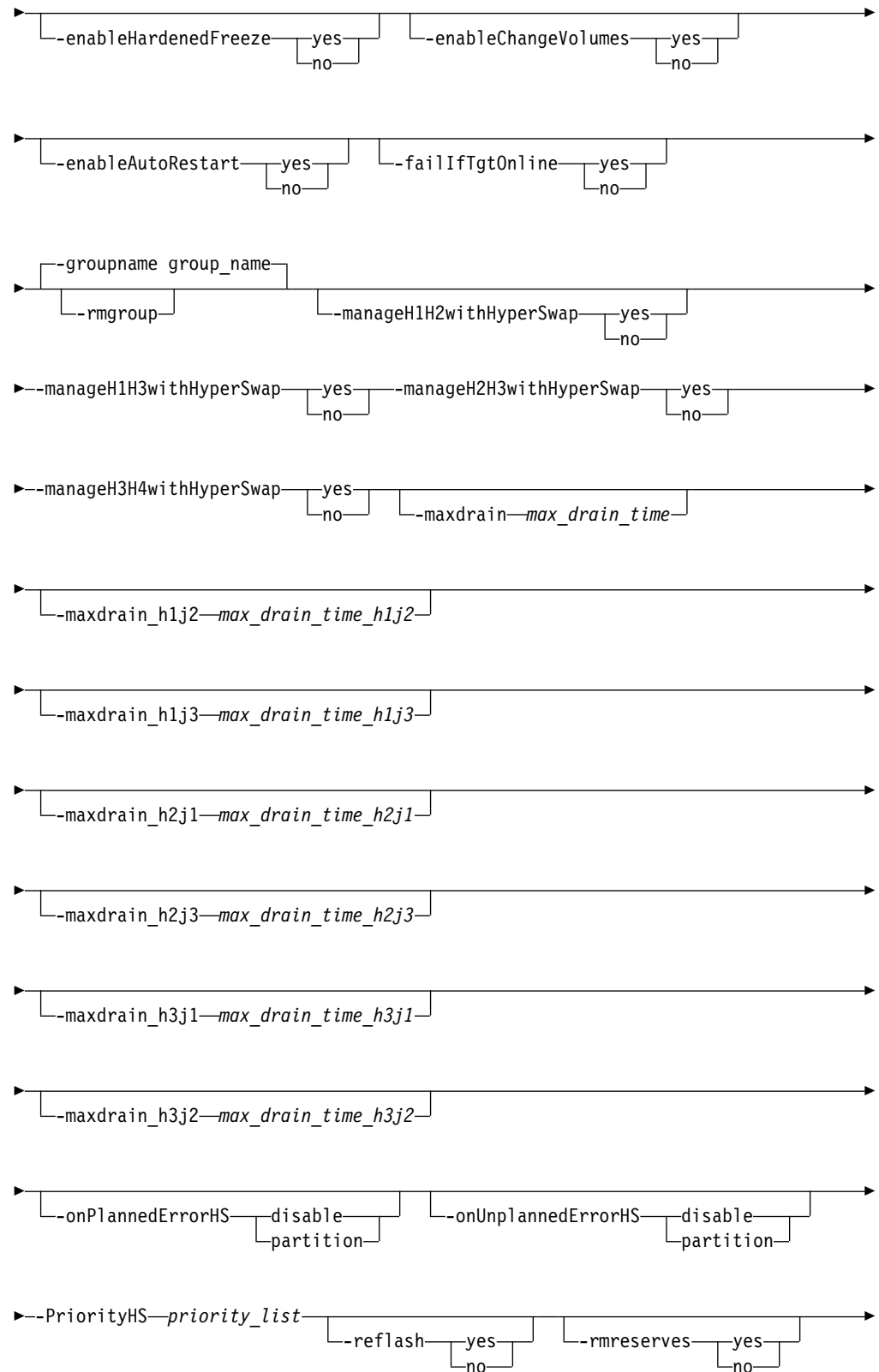
Use the **chsess** command to change the description or properties for an existing session. If you want to change the session type, you must delete the session and create another session.

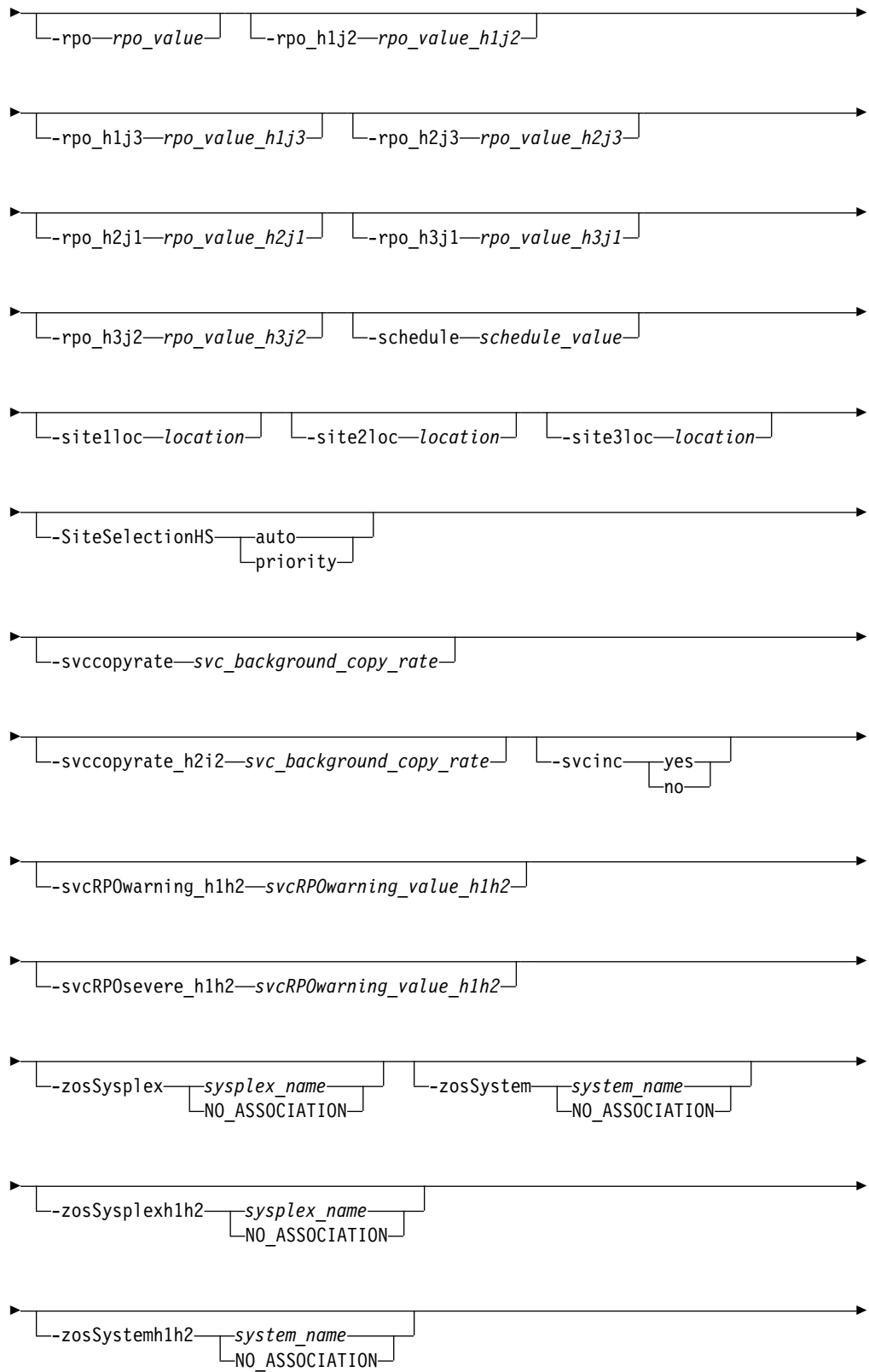
Syntax

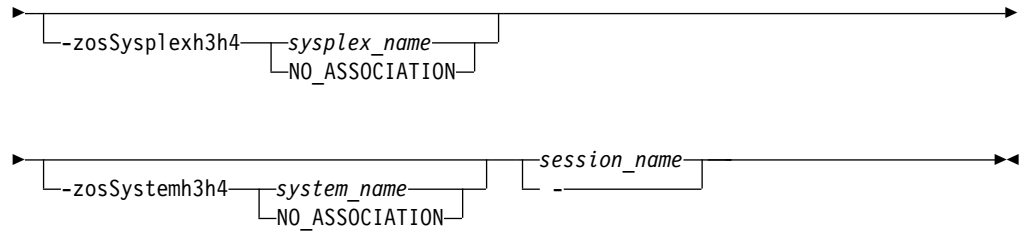
The properties that are available for a session depend on the session type and the storage system type. For a description of the correlating properties by session type and storage system type in the GUI, see the *IBM Copy Services Manager User's Guide*.











Parameters for sessions for all storage system types

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-site1loc *location*

Specifies a location to associate with the site 1 volume role.

-site2loc *location*

Specifies a location to associate with the site 2 volume role.

-site3loc *location*

Specifies a location to associate with the site 3 volume role.

-desc *description*

Specifies the new description for the session. This description can have up to 250 alphanumeric characters. If the description contains white space, enclose it in single quotation marks.

-groupname *group_name*

Specifies the new session group for the session to belong to. The group name can have up to 250 alphanumeric characters. If the group name contains white spaces, enclose it in single quotation marks.

-rmgroup

Specifies the session should be removed from the session group it currently belongs to.

session_name... | **-**

Specifies the name of the session that is to be modified.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Parameters for sessions for IBM DS8000 or TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server storage systems

-dsinc { yes | no }

For a point-in-time session, specifies whether the FlashCopy relationship is incremental for the next Flash or Start command.

Note: Multiple incremental FlashCopy will be used if the source storage system supports it.

For practice sessions, specifies whether the practice role pair relationship is incremental for the next Flash command. For Global Mirror Either Direction

with Two Site Practice sessions, this parameter will apply to both the H1-I1 and H2-I2 role pairs. This parameter is valid for Global Mirror practice sessions only if the source storage system supports multiple incremental FlashCopy. Valid values are yes or no

-dspers { yes | no }

Specifies whether the next FlashCopy relationship for this session is persistent. Valid values are yes or no.

For practice sessions, this parameter applies only to sessions for IBM DS8000 version 4.2 or later.

-dsnocpy { yes | no }

For a point-in-time session, specifies whether the FlashCopy relationship is established with a background copy for the next Flash or Start command. Valid values are yes or no.

For practice sessions, this parameter applies only to sessions for IBM DS8000 version 4.2 or later.

-dspmir { no | preferred | required }

Specifies the Preserve Mirror option for storage systems. You can specify no, preferred, or required. If this option is not specified, the default is no preserve mirror options.

-dstgtpprc { true | false }

Allows the FlashCopy target volume to be a remote mirror and copy source volume if the option is set to true. This parameter must be set to true for the **dspmir** parameter to take effect. The default option for this parameter is false.

-rmreserves { yes | no }

Removes the persistent reserve on the target volumes to allow the establishment of a session. When this parameter is set to yes, the setting persists for the session and remains set until you change the value. Warnings are displayed to indicate that the value is set to yes when you attempt to start the session.

-failIfTgtOnline { yes | no }

Determines whether the **Start** command fails if a target volume is online. If the parameter is set to yes, the target is determined to be online to a host, and the **Start** command fails.

Notes:

- Online means that path groups are present. A path group is necessary, but is not enough to indicate that the volume is online. For example, an LPAR that is not part of a sysplex can be taken down (for example, through a power-off without a shutdown) and path groups display as present, but no LPAR has the volume online. That is, the path groups are present, but IBM z/OS software might think the volumes are offline.
- It cannot be determined with absolute certainty whether the target is online to a host.
- This parameter affects only count key data (CKD) volumes.

-aftersuspend { hold | release }

Specifies the session operation after a suspend occurs. This parameter applies to Metro Mirror and Metro Global Mirror sessions. Valid policies are:

hold Does not allow any updates to the primary volume after a suspend.

release

Allows updates to the primary volume after a suspend.

-zosSysplex {sysplex_name | NO_ASSOCIATION}

Specifies or clears the z/OS sysplex that is associated with the session. The **-zosSysplex** or **-zosSystem** parameter is required to use the **-SiteSelectionHS** and **-PriorityHS** parameters and the parameters for managing HyperSwap and enabling hardened freeze.

sysplex_name

Specifies the z/OS sysplex that contains the host system that is connected to the storage system.

NO_ASSOCIATION

Clears the associated sysplex if a sysplex is defined for the session.

-zosSystem {system_name | NO_ASSOCIATION}

Specifies or clears the z/OS system that is associated with the session. The **-zosSystem** or **-zosSysplex** parameter is required to use the **-SiteSelectionHS** and **-PriorityHS** parameters and the parameters for managing HyperSwap and enabling hardened freeze.

system_name

Specifies the z/OS system that is connected to the storage system.

NO_ASSOCIATION

Clears the associated system if a system is defined for the session.

-SiteSelectionHS { auto | priority }

For multi-target sessions, determines how HyperSwap Manager selects the target site for a HyperSwap operation.

The following values are valid for this parameter:

auto

Enables HyperSwap Manager to select the target site for a HyperSwap operation. This is the default value.

HyperSwap Manager selects the target site that keeps the most sysplex members active. If multiple target sites are equal candidates for the HyperSwap operation, HyperSwap Manager uses the **priority** value to select the target site. For example, if both site 1 and site 3 are equal, but the **priority** value is **3,2,1**, HyperSwap selects site 3.

priority

Directs HyperSwap Manager to select the target site that is based on the priority list that is specified by the **-PriorityHS** parameter.

-PriorityHS priority_list

For multi-target sessions, determines the priority in which HyperSwap Manager selects the target site for a HyperSwap operation. The value for this parameter is a string with the list of sites in order of priority. You can separate the sites by a comma (,) or a semi-colon (;).

The default value is **1,2,3**, which indicates that the first priority is site 1, the second priority is site 2, and the third priority is site 3. If site 1 is the active site, then the first value **1** is ignored. HyperSwap Manager selects site 2 or 3 depending on the HyperSwap status and availability of the sites, with site 2 being the preferred site.

If you enter the parameter **-SiteSelectionHS auto**, this parameter is used only when multiple target sites are equal candidates for a HyperSwap operation.

If you enter the parameter **-SiteSelectionHS priority**, this parameter determines the order in which HyperSwap Manager selects the target site.

```

-manageH1H2withHyperSwap { yes | no }
-manageH1H3withHyperSwap { yes | no }
-manageH2H3withHyperSwap { yes | no }

```

Enables the following session types to use Basic HyperSwap.

- Metro Mirror Failover/Failback
- Metro Global Mirror
- Metro Global Mirror with Practice
- Metro Mirror-Metro Mirror

For single-target sessions, use the **-manageH1H2withHyperSwap** parameter. For multi-target sessions, use the applicable parameter for each role pair. For example, if you want to apply this parameter to only the H1>H3 role pair, use **-manageH1H3withHyperSwap**.

The following values are valid values for these parameters:

yes

Enables the following HyperSwap options to be set for the session:

- **-disableHS yes | no**
- **-onConfigErrorHS disable | partition**
- **-onPlannedErrorHS disable | partition**
- **-onUnplannedErrorHS disable | partition**

no Disables HyperSwap options for the session.

-disableHS { yes | no }

Disables HyperSwap for all of the role pairs that are in the session. This parameter is applicable only if a **-manageHxHxwithHyperSwap** parameter is set to yes.

If HyperSwap detects a triggering event while it is disabled, it does not perform a swap.

Issuing the **-disableHS no** parameter resets the disable command (**-disableHS yes**), but does not necessarily mean that HyperSwap is enabled. It might mean only that HyperSwap is no longer disabled for operator reasons. For example, the HyperSwap address spaces were not started, a new member was in the process of joining the sysplex, or there was a HyperSwap in progress.

To determine the reasons that HyperSwap might be disabled, see the session messages in the GUI. To view the messages, open the Sessions page, select the session, and click **Session Actions > View/Modify > View Messages**.

-onPlannedErrorHS { disable | partition }

This optional parameter specifies the policy for the action to be taken when an error occurs during a planned HyperSwap. Valid policies are:

disable

HyperSwap processing is stopped and backed up, and HyperSwap is disabled.

partition

Systems that cannot complete the swap operation are partitioned out of the sysplex, and the HyperSwap continues with the remaining members of the sysplex. This is the default value.

-onUnplannedErrorHS { disable | partition }

Specifies the policy for the action to be taken when an error occurs during an unplanned HyperSwap. Valid policies are:

disable

HyperSwap processing is stopped and backed up, HyperSwap is disabled, and a permanent I/O error is returned to any users of the failing device.

partition

Systems that cannot complete the swap operation are partitioned out of the sysplex, and the HyperSwap continues with the remaining members of the sysplex. This is the default value.

-enableHardenedFreeze { yes | no }

Specifies whether the z/OS Input/Output Supervisor (IOS) is used to manage freeze operations. If this parameter is set to yes, the following actions can occur:

- A freeze can occur regardless of whether the copy services management server is started or stopped.
- You can include z/OS system volumes such as paging, database, and WebSphere® Application Server hierarchical file system (HFS) volumes as Metro Mirror volumes in the session. When you set the **-enableHardenedFreeze** parameter to yes, IOS manages the freeze operations for all Metro Mirror volumes in the session, which prevents the copy services management server from freezing itself. This parameter does not enable IOS to manage freeze operations for Global Mirror volumes.

IOS support for managing freeze operations is included with HyperSwap. This parameter is ignored if the **-manageH1H2withHyperSwap** parameter is set to yes.

This parameter requires two z/OS address spaces: the Basic HyperSwap Management address space and the Basic HyperSwap API address space. For instructions about how to start these address spaces, see “Preparing to use HyperSwap from z/OS” in Knowledge Center.

-coordint *coordination_interval_time*

Specifies the new coordination interval time for Global Mirror type sessions. This parameter is meant to be used by advanced users.

-coordint_h1j3, **-coordint_h2j1**, **-coordint_h1j2**, **-coordint_h3j1**, **-coordint_h3j2**, and **-coordint_h2j3** relate to the role pair.

-rpo *rpo_value*

Specifies the new consistency group interval time in seconds for the XX-XX role pair. The value of data exposure for the session trends toward this value. This parameter applies only to Global Mirror session types and copy types where the recovery point objective (RPO) is mapped. A value of 0 specifies that the storage system continuously attempt to form consistency groups. The possible range of values is 0 - 65535. The default is 0.

Parameters **-rpo_h1j2**, **-rpo_h1j3**, **-rpo_h2j1**, **-rpo_h3j1**, **-rpo_h3j2**, and **-rpo_h2j3** relate to the role pair.

-dsRPOwarning *dsRPOwarning_value*

Specifies whether an alert is generated when an RPO threshold is exceeded for a role pair. This parameter applies only to Global Mirror and Metro Global Mirror sessions.

The range of values is 0 - 65535. The default is 0, which specifies that no alerts are generated. If the value is other than 0, it must be greater than the value for the **-rpo** parameter and less than the value for the **-dsRP0severe** parameter.

Parameters **-dsRP0warning_h1j2**, **-dsRP0warning_h1j3**, **-dsRP0warning_h2j1**, **-dsRP0warning_h3j1**, **-dsRP0warning_h3j2**, and **-dsRP0warning_h2j3** relate to the role pair.

-dsRP0severe *dsRP0severe_value*

Specifies whether an alert is generated and the session status is changed to Severe when an RPO threshold is exceeded for a role pair. This parameter applies only to Global Mirror and Metro Global Mirror sessions.

The range of values is 0 - 65535. The default is 0, which specifies that no alerts are generated. If the value is other than 0, it must be greater than the value for the **-dsRP0warning** parameter.

Parameters **-dsRP0severe_h1j2**, **-dsRP0severe_h1j3**, **-dsRP0severe_h2j1**, **-dsRP0severe_h3j1**, **-dsRP0severe_h3j2**, and **-dsRP0severe_h2j3** relate to the role pair.

-reflash { **yes** | **no** }

For sessions with journal volumes, specifies whether to reflash a consistent set of data to the journal volume after a Recover command is issued to the session. Reflashing to the journal volume ensures that there is a consistent copy of the data to recover from if failures occur during resynchronization. Valid values are yes or no. If you enter no, the journal volumes will not have a consistent copy of the data after the recover operation. However, the space will be available when using space efficient volumes.

-maxdrain *max_drain_time*

Specifies the new maximum drain time for Global Mirror type sessions. This parameter is meant to be used by advanced users.

If you specify **-maxdrain 0**, the storage system uses its default value instead of zero. Any other positive integer in the valid range is accepted by the storage system. However, when a zero is sent to the storage system, the storage system is instructed to set the value back to its default value.

The **-maxdrain** parameter is related to the DS **-drain** parameter. The default value for the **-drain** parameter is 30240 seconds; the maximum value for the **-maxdrain** parameter is 65,535 seconds. For more information, see the **mkgmir** command in the *IBM DS8000 Command-Line Interface User's Guide*.

Parameters **-maxdrain_h1j3**, **-maxdrain_h2j3**, **-maxdrain_h2j1**, **-maxdrain_h1j2**, **-maxdrain_h3j1**, and **-maxdrain_h3j2** relate to the role pair.

Parameters for sessions for SAN Volume Controller, Storwize family, or Storwize V7000 Unified storage systems

-svcinc { **yes** | **no** }

For a point-in-time session, specifies whether the FlashCopy relationship for the storage systems is incremental for the next Flash or Start command. Valid values are yes or no.

-svccopyrate *svc_background_copy_rate*

Specifies the copy rate that the storage systems use to complete the background copy of the FlashCopy relationships. For older storage systems

running IBM Spectrum Virtualize, specify a value in the range 0-100; for newer storage systems at release 7.8.1 and higher, specify a value in the range 0-150. The default is 50.

When you specify 0, you are specifying the equivalent of the no-copy option for a TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server or IBM DS8000 FlashCopy session. If the session is completing a background copy when you change the option, the background copy rate of the consistency group on the storage system will be immediately modified.

The consistency group immediately uses the new rate to complete the background copy.

-svccopyrate_h2i2 *svc_background_copy_rate*

Specifies the copy rate that the storage systems use to complete the background copy of the FlashCopy relationships. For older storage systems running IBM Spectrum Virtualize, specify a value in the range 0-100; for newer storage systems at release 7.8.1 and higher, specify a value in the range 0-150. The default is 50.

A value of 0 is the equivalent of specifying the no-copy option for a TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server or IBM DS8000 FlashCopy session. If the session is completing a background copy when you change the option, the background copy rate of the consistency group on the storage system is immediately updated. The consistency group immediately uses that rate to complete the background copy.

-enableChangeVolumes { yes | no }

Specifies whether the use of change volumes is enabled in the copy sets for the session. Change volumes are denoted as Cx, where x identifies the site. These volumes contain point-in-time images that are copied from the H1 and H2 volumes. The C1 volume stores changes from the H1 volume. These changes are sent from the C1 volume to the H2 volume, and then to the C2 volume.

Because the data that is replicated between sites contains point-in-time changes rather than all changes, a lower bandwidth link is required between the sites when change volumes are used. However, the use of change volumes can result in an increase to data exposure. Therefore, you might want to enable or disable this option depending on your network traffic or business requirements.

The valid values for this parameter are yes or no. The default is yes. This parameter applies only to Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes sessions.

The images are copied to the change volumes during the cycle period that is defined by the **-cycleperiod** parameter.

The use of this parameter requires that the session is in an inactive state. An example of an inactive state is Defined or Suspended.

-cycleperiod *cycle_period*

Specifies the period in seconds in which the change volumes are refreshed with a consistent copy of the data. If a copy does not complete in the cycle period, the next cycle period will not start until the copy is complete. The range of possible values is 60 - 86400. The default is 300. This parameter applies only to Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes sessions.

-svcRPOwarning_h1h2 *svcRPOwarning_h1h2_value*

Specifies whether an alert is generated when an RPO threshold is exceeded for

a H1-H2 role pair. This parameter applies only to Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes sessions.

The range of values is 0 - 172800. The default is 0, which specifies that no alerts are generated. If the value is other than 0, it must be greater than the value for the **-cycleperiod** parameter and less than the value for the **-svcRPOsevere_h1h2** parameter.

-svcRPOsevere_h1h2 *svcRPOsevere_h1h2_value*

Specifies whether an alert is generated and the session status is changed to Severe when an RPO threshold is exceeded for a H1-H2 role pair. This parameter applies only to Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes sessions.

The range of values is 0 - 172800. The default is 0, which specifies that no alerts are generated. If the value is other than 0, it must be greater than the value for the **-svcRPOwarning_h1h2** parameter.

-enableAutoRestart { **yes** | **no** }

Specifies whether the session should restart automatically if it unexpectedly suspends with reason code 1720 or 1920. An automatic restart is attempted for every suspend with reason code 1720 or 1920 a certain number of times (determined by the storage server's **gmlinktolerance** value) within a 30 minute time period. If the number of allowable automatic restarts is exceeded within the time period, the session will not restart automatically on the next unexpected suspend. Issue a **Start** command to restart the session, clear the automatic restart counters and enable automatic restarts.

If a Global Mirror with Change Volumes session is running with change volumes disabled, this option causes the session to restart automatically with change volumes enabled and form consistency groups based on the cycle time defined in the session properties. After the condition that caused the suspend with reason code 1720 or 1920 is fixed, you can disable change volumes manually by issuing the **chsess** CLI command with the **-enableChangeVolumes** option set to No.

Warning: Enabling this option causes the session to be automatically restarted by the server. When this occurs, the secondary site will not be consistent until the relationships are fully re-synced.

-autoRestartDelay *delay_time*

Specifies the amount of time, in seconds, in which the copy services management server will wait after an unexpected suspend with reason code 1720 or 1920 before automatically restarting the session. This option is only valid when the **-enableAutoRestart** option is set to Yes.

The range of values is 0 - 43200. The default value is 0, which specifies that the session is restarted immediately following a suspend with reason code 1720 or 1920.

Parameters for sessions for FlashSystems/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

-rpo *rpo_value*

Specifies the RPO threshold for the session in seconds. The **-rpo** parameter works with the **-schedule** parameter to determine:

- How often the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate attempts to form a consistency group.
- Whether the RPO value exceeds the threshold.

If the RPO on the storage system exceeds the RPO threshold for the session, the session changes to the Severe state and an alert is generated. The possible range of values is 30 - 86400. The default is 30.

-schedule *schedule*

For an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Global Mirror session, this option specifies how often the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate forms a consistency group to ensure consistency on the secondary side and achieve the RPO that is set by the **-rpo** option.

The following are the possible values for **-schedule**: {never | min_interval | 00:00:30 | 00:00:40 | 00:00:50 | 00:01:00 | 00:01:10 | 00:01:20 | 00:01:30 | 00:01:40 | 00:01:50 | 00:02:00 | 00:05:00 | 00:10:00 | 00:15:00 | 00:30:00 | 01:00:00 | 02:00:00 | 03:00:00 | 04:00:00 | 06:00:00 | 08:00:00 | 12:00:00}

The default is min_interval, which is 20 seconds.

Example: Changing the description of a session

The following command changes the description of the session session1 to MGM session.

```
csmcli> chsess -quiet -desc "MGM session" session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1124I The description for session session1 was modified successfully.  
The new description is MGM session.
```

Example: Changing the session site locations

The following command changes location of each site in Metro Global Mirror session session2.

```
csmcli> chsess -quiet -site1loc Boulder -site2loc Tucson -site3loc Marana session2
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1096I The locations for sessions session2 and Site 3 were set successfully.
```

Example: Disabling HyperSwap for a session

The following command disables HyperSwap for session session3.

```
csmcli> chsess -quiet -disableHS yes session3
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR5411E Basic HyperSwap is disabled by operator for session session3.
```

Example: Setting the cycle period for a Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes session

The following command sets the cycle period for session session4. The cycle period is the period in seconds during which a point-in-time image is copied to the change volumes.

```
csmcli> chsess -quiet -cycleperiod 567 session4
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1228I The options for session session4 have been set successfully.
```

Example: Setting the target site and priority for a HyperSwap operation for a Metro Mirror multi-target session

The following command directs HyperSwap Manager to select the target site for a HyperSwap operation based on the priority list for session session5. In this example, the target site priority is site 3, site 2, and site 1.

```
csmcli> chsess -quiet -SiteSelectionHS priority -PriorityHS 3,2,1 session5
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1228I The options for session session5 have been set successfully.
```

chsystem

Use the **chsystem** command to make changes to system settings files for the server. The server may need to be restarted for changes to take effect. **Note:** This command can only be issued by a user with Administrator authority.

Syntax

```
➔ chsystem [-f file] [-p property] [-v value] [-quiet] ➔
```

-help
-h
-?

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-f file

Specifies the system file that needs to be updated. Valid system file parameters are "server", "bootstrap", "essclient", and "zosclient".

-p property

Specifies the system property to be updated in the system file. This should be the exact property name that will change in the file.

-v value

Specifies the value to be set for the system property. This should be an exact string matching the value that you want to set. Values can contain any printable character.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Note: See the "rmserver.properties file" on page 191 for more information about Copy Services Manager server configuration settings.

Example: Changing the https port for this server

```
csmcli> chsystem -f bootstrap -p https_port_var -v 9559
```

The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to change system properties for the server? [y/n]:y
IWNR4200I [Feb 2, 2017 9:45:40 AM] Successfully updated property https_port_var
to value 9559 in property file bootstrap.properties.
```

chuser

Use the **chuser** command to change the password for a user in the basic user registry. This command is not available when running on a z/OS system. **Note:** This command can only be issued for the user that is currently logged in. You cannot change a password for another user.

Syntax

```
►► chuser [-help] [-quiet] -name name [-password password] ►►
```

Diagram illustrating the syntax of the **chuser** command. The command starts with **chuser**, followed by optional flags: **-help**, **-h**, and **-?** (grouped together). Then comes the optional flag **-quiet**, followed by the required flag **-name** and its argument *name*. Finally, there is an optional flag **-password** followed by its argument *password*. The command ends with a right-pointing arrow.

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-name *name*

Specifies a user name you want to change the password for in the basic user registry.

-password *password*

Specifies the password to set for the new user. If you do not include this parameter, you will be prompted for the password. If prompted, the password will be masked and you will be prompted to confirm the password by retyping it. If the parameter is used, it will display in plain text but no additional prompting will occur. The maximum password length is 104 characters.

Example: Changing a user password

The following command will update the password for user bob.

```
csmcli> chuser -name bob
```

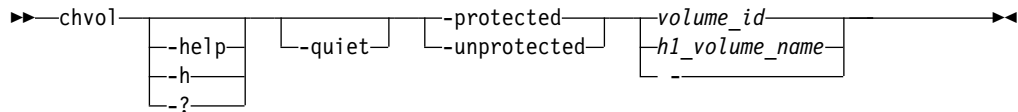
The following output is returned:

```
Please enter a password for user bob:
Please confirm the password for user bob:
IWNR4038I Successfully updated the password for user bob.
```

chvol

Use the **chvol** command to change the protection setting for a volume. You cannot change the protection setting for a volume that is in a session.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-protected

Marks the volume or volumes as protected. It specifies that the volumes cannot be used in an add copy set action.

-unprotected

Marks the volume or volumes as unprotected. It specifies that the volumes can be used in an add copy set action.

volume_id | volume_name | -

Specifies the volume for which you want to change the protection setting.

For IBM® DS8000 and IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage systems, use the volume ID for this parameter.

For other storage systems, you can use the volume ID or name for this parameter.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Protecting a volume by using a volume ID

The following command marks the volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0001 as protected.

```
csmdi> chvol -protected DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0001
```

The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to change volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0001? [y/n]:y
IWNE9300I The set protection command completed without any errors. There
were 1 element(s) protected and 0 element(s) unprotected.
```

```
IWNE9302I The element DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0001 has been protected.
```

Example: Unprotecting a volume by using a volume ID

The following command marks the volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0001 as unprotected.

```
csmdi> chvol -unprotected DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0001
```

The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to change volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0001?
[y/n]:y
IWNE9300I The set protection command completed without any errors. There
were 0 element(s) protected and 1 element(s) unprotected.
IWNE9303I The element DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0001 has been unprotected.
```

Example: Protecting a volume by using a volume name

The following command marks the volume STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:myvolume1 as protected.

```
csmdi> chvol -protected STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:myvolume1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to change volume
STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7(myvolume1)? [y/n]:y
IWNE9300I The set protection command completed without any errors. There
were 1 element(s) protected and 0 element(s) unprotected.

IWNE9302I The element STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7(myvolume1)
has been protected.
```

Example: Unprotecting a volume by using a volume name

The following command marks the volume STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:myvolume1 as unprotected.

```
csmdi> chvol -unprotected STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:myvolume1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to change volume
STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7(myvolume1)? [y/n]:y
IWNE9300I The set protection command completed without any errors. There
were 0 element(s) protected and 1 element(s) unprotected.

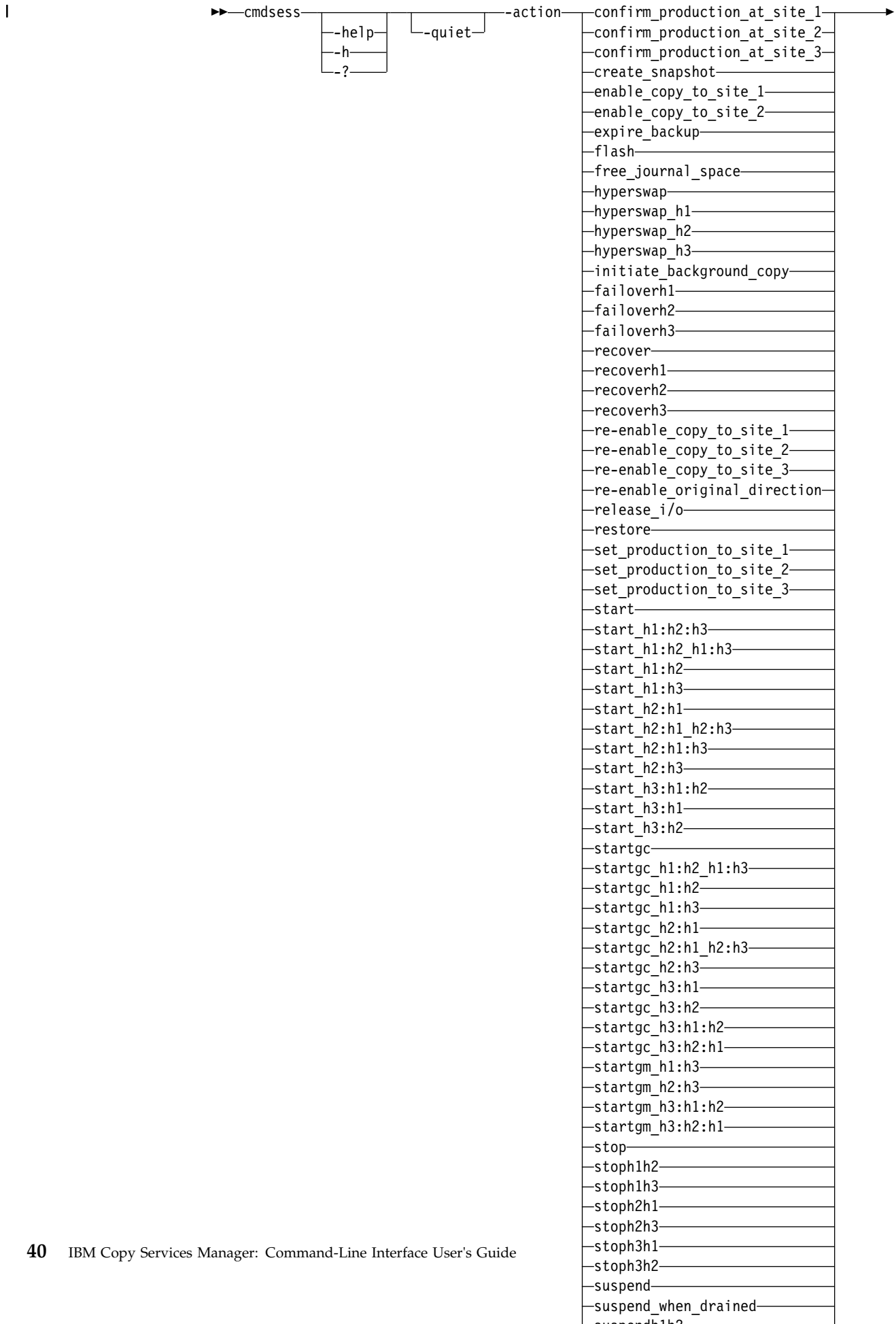
IWNE9302I The element STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7(myvolume1)
has been unprotected.
```

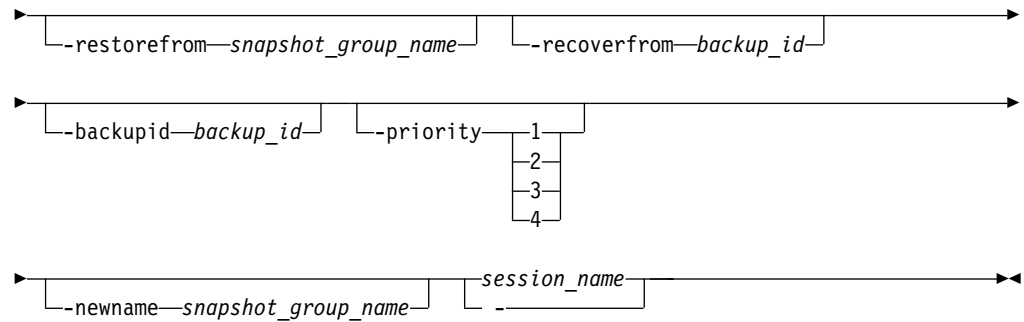
cmdsess

Use the **cmdsess** command to run a specific action against a session.

Tip: To list all of the session actions that can be run for a session, use the **lssessactions** command.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-action *action_type*

Specifies the action type (command) depending on the state and type of session. The possible action types are displayed in the syntax diagram and are described in the *IBM Copy Services Manager User's Guide*.

-restorefrom *snapshot_group_name*

Specifies the name of the snapshot group that you want to use to restore the data in the H1 volumes for the session. The snapshot group must be in the session.

This parameter is required if the **-action** parameter value is restore and the session is for XIV storage systems.

-recoverfrom *backup id*

Specifies the ID of the backup that you want to use to recover the data for the R1 volumes of the session. The backup ID must be a valid backup ID in the session.

This parameter is required if the **-action** parameter value is *recover_backup* and the session is for XIV storage systems.

```
-priority { 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 }
```

Specifies the priority in which the snapshot group is deleted from the session. The value is the number 1 - 4. A value of 1 specifies that the snapshot group is deleted last. A value of 4 specifies that the snapshot group is deleted first.

This parameter is optional and only used if the **-action** parameter value is create snapshot.

-newname *snapshot_group_name*

Specifies the new name for the snapshot group.

This parameter is optional and only used if the **-action** parameter value is create snapshot.

```
session name | -
```

Specifies the name of the session that the action will run against.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Starting a session

The following command runs the **Start H1->H2->H3** action on session session1:

```
csmcli> cmdsess -action start_h1:h2:h3 session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1813W This command will initiate the copying of data from
Site 1 to Site 2 and Site 3 for session session1, overwriting any data on Site 2
and Site 3 for any inactive copy sets. For ESS/DS devices, exactly one path will
be established between each LSS pair without existing paths. Do you want to
continue? [y/n]:y
```

```
IWNR1027I The command Start H1->H2->H3 in session session1 has completed
successfully.
```

Example: Reversing the direction of replication

The following command runs the **Enable Copy to Site 1** action on the session1 session without prompting for confirmation:

```
csmcli> cmdsess -quiet -action enable_copy_to_site_1 session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1027I The command Enable Copy to Site 1 in session session1 has
completed successfully.
```

For multi-target session types, the equivalent parameter is **set_production_to_site_x**, where *x* is the production site. For example, the parameter **set_production_to_site_2** enables data replication from Site 2 to Site 1 and Site 3.

Example: Creating a snapshot group in a FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate snapshot session

The following command creates a snapshot group in session snap1:

```
csmcli> cmdsess -action create_snapshot snap1
```

The following output is returned:

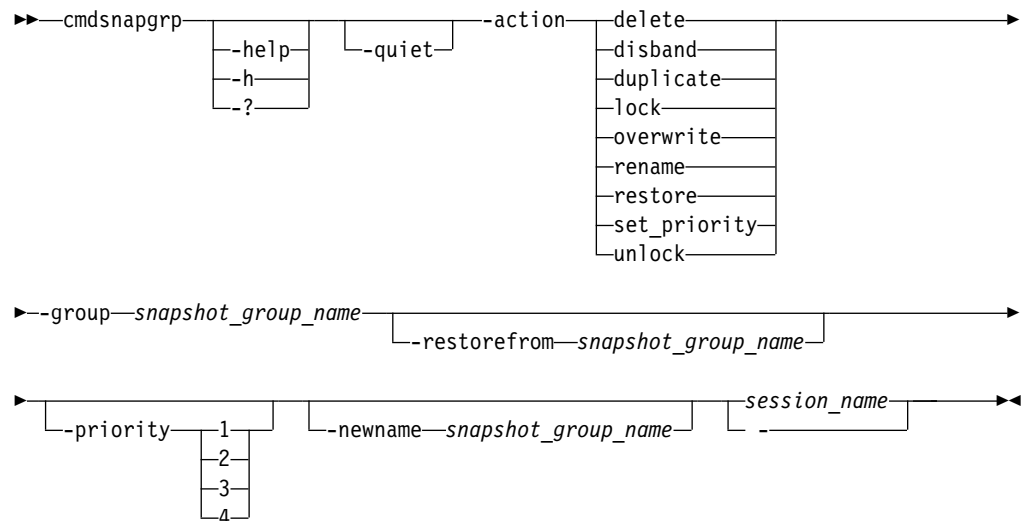
```
IWNR1855W This command will create a new snapshot group containing
snapshots of the source volumes in session snap1. Do you want to continue? [y/n]:y
IWNR1026I The Create Snapshot command in session snap1 has completed.
```

cmdsnapgrp

Use the **cmdsnapgrp** command to run a specific action against a snapshot group that is in a FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate snapshot session.

A snapshot group is a grouping of snapshots of individual volumes in a consistency group at a specific point in time.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers **yes** to all confirmation prompts.

-action *action_type*

Specifies the action that you want to complete for a snapshot group in a session. The valid values are:

delete Deletes the snapshot group and all the individual snapshots that are in the group from the session and from FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate.

If the deleted snapshot group is the last snapshot group that is associated with the session, the session returns to the Defined state.

disband

Disbands the snapshot group. When a snapshot group is disbanded, the snapshot group no longer exists. All snapshots in the snapshot group become individual snapshots that are no longer associated to the consistency group or the session.

After a snapshot group is disbanded, it is no longer shown in or managed by the copy services management server. If the disbanded snapshot group is the last snapshot group that is associated with the session, the session returns to the Defined state.

duplicate

Duplicates the snapshot group. When a snapshot group is duplicated, a new snapshot group is created with new snapshots for all volumes that are in the duplicated group. A name for the duplicated snapshot group is generated automatically by FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate.

lock

Locks a snapshot group. If the snapshot group is locked, write operations to the snapshots within the snapshot group are prevented. By default, a snapshot group is locked when it is created.

This action is valid only if the snapshot group is unlocked.

overwrite

Overwrites the snapshot group to reflect the data that is on the master volume.

rename

Renames the snapshot group.

To specify the new name, use the **-newname** parameter.

restore

Restores the contents of a snapshot group by using another snapshot group in the session. Both of the snapshot groups must contain the same subset of volumes.

To specify the snapshot group from which you want to restore, use the **-restorefrom** parameter.

set_priority

Sets the priority in which a snapshot group is deleted. The value is the number 1 - 4. A value of 1 specifies that the snapshot group is deleted last. A value of 4 specifies that the snapshot group is deleted first.

To set the deletion priority, use the **-priority** parameter.

unlock

Unlocks a snapshot group. If the snapshot group is unlocked, write operations to the snapshots within the snapshot group are enabled and the snapshot group is shown as modified if you run the **lssnapgrp** command.

This action is valid only if the snapshot group is locked.

-group *snapshot_group_name*

Specifies the name of the snapshot group that you want to run the action against.

-restorefrom *snapshot_group_name*

Specifies the name of the snapshot group that you want to use to restore the snapshot group that is defined by the **-group** parameter.

This parameter is required if the **-action** parameter value is restore.

-priority { 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 }

Specifies the priority in which the snapshot group will be deleted from the session. The value is the number 1 - 4. A value of 1 specifies that the snapshot group is deleted last. A value of 4 specifies that the snapshot group is deleted first.

This parameter is required if the **-action** parameter value is set_priority.

-newname *snapshot_group_name*

Specifies the new name for the snapshot group.

This parameter is required if the **-action** parameter value is rename.

session_name | -

Specifies the name of the session that contains the snapshot group.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Deleting a snapshot group

The following command deletes the snapshot group `snap1_002.snap_group_00018` in the session `snap1`.

```
csmdi> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_00018 -action delete -quiet snap1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1322I The Delete command has completed for snapshot groups  
snap1_002.snap_group_00018 in session snap1.
```

Example: Disbanding a snapshot group

The following command disbands the snapshot group `snap1_002.snap_group_00017` in the session `snap1`.

```
csmdi> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_00017 -action disband -quiet snap1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1322I The Disband command has completed for snapshot groups  
snap1_002.snap_group_00017 in session snap1.
```

Example: Duplicating a snapshot group

The following command duplicates the snapshot group `snap1_002.snap_group_0001` in the session `snap1`.

```
csmdi> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 -action duplicate -quiet snap1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1322I The Duplicate command has completed for snapshot groups  
snap1_002.snap_group_0001 in session snap1.
```

Example: Locking a snapshot group

The following command locks the snapshot group `snap1_002.snap_group_0001` in the session `snap1`.

```
csmdi> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 -action lock -quiet snap1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1322I The Lock command has completed for snapshot groups  
snap1_002.snap_group_0001 in session snap1.
```

Example: Overwriting a snapshot group

The following command overwrites the snapshot group `snap1_002.snap_group_0001` in the session `snap1`.

```
csmdi> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 -action overwrite -quiet snap1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1322I The Overwrite command has completed for snapshot groups  
snap1_002.snap_group_0001 in session snap1.
```

Example: Renaming a snapshot group

The following command renames the snapshot group `snap1_002.snap_group_00016` to `snappgroup1` in the session `snap1`.

```
csmcli> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_00016 -action rename  
-newname snapgroup1 -quiet snap1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1326I The snapshot group snap1_002.snap_group_00016 in session  
snap1 was renamed to snapgroup1.
```

Example: Restoring a snapshot group

The following command restores the snapshot group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 from snap1_002.snap_group_00017 in the session snap1.

```
csmcli> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 -action restore  
-restorefrom snap1_002.snap_group_00017 -quiet snap1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1325I The snapshot group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 in session  
snap1 was restored from snapshot group snap1_002.snap_group_00017.
```

Example: Setting the deletion priority for a snapshot group

The following command sets a deletion priority of 4 for the snapshot group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 in the session snap1.

```
csmcli> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 -action set_priority -priority 4  
-quiet snap1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1324I The deletion priority for snapshot groups  
snap1_002.snap_group_0001 in session snap1 was set to 4.
```

Example: Unlocking a snapshot group

The following command unlocks the snapshot group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 in the session snap1.

```
csmcli> cmdsnapgrp -group snap1_002.snap_group_0001 -action unlock -quiet snap1
```

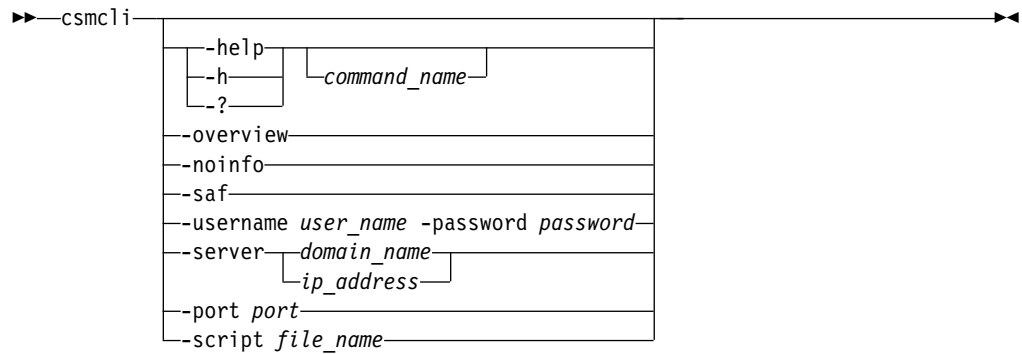
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1322I The Unlock command has completed for snapshot groups  
snap1_002.snap_group_0001 in session snap1.
```

csmcli

The **csmcli** command is the Copy Services Manager command-line interface (CLI) program. This command can be used either on its own, using the associated options and arguments, or interactively by starting **csmcli** with no parameters or arguments to start an interactive session.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -? [*command_name*]

Displays help for the specified command. If you do not specify a command name, this option displays help for the **csmcli** command. If you specify more parameters and arguments other than a command name, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-overview

Displays overview information about using the CLI program.

-noinfo

Removes the copyright, version, and build information when you start the **csmcli**.

-saf

Queries the SAF facility defined in `repcli.properties` to optionally bypass the password prompt and use the user that is currently logged into the OMVS shell or user specified in a BPXBATCH job calling the CLI. The access of a user is validated as a member of the facility if all prerequisite configurations were completed and expected permissions were set correctly.

-username *user_name*

Specifies the Copy Services Manager user name with which you want to log in.

-password *password*

Specifies the password for the Copy Services Manager user name with which you want to log in.

Important: When you specify this option, the password is displayed as plain text. Using this form of authentication can cause a security exposure.

If you specify a user name but not a password, and Copy Services Manager does not find the password in an authentication file, you are prompted for the password. If prompted for the password, the password does not display in plain text.

-server {*domain_name* | *ip_address*}

Sets the domain name or IP address of the Copy Services Manager server to which you want to connect.

Remember: The server domain name or IP address is used only during this CLI session.

-port *port*

Sets the port number to be used by the CLI program to connect to the Copy Services Manager server. The default value is 5110.

Remember: The port number is used only during this CLI session.

-scriptfile_name

Runs the set of command strings in the specified file outside of an interactive CLI session. If you specify this parameter, you must specify a file name.

The format options that are specified by using the **setoutput** command apply to all commands in the script.

command_string

Runs the specified command string outside of a CLI session.

Description

You can run **csmcli** commands locally from the management server or remotely by accessing the management server by using a remote-access utility, such as Secure Shell (SSH) or Telnet.

You can run the **csmcli** command without any parameters (or with only the **username** and **password** parameters) to start an interactive CLI session. If the **username** and **password** parameters are not entered initially, you will be prompted to enter them.

Remember:

You can also go to the installation directory and double-click the **csmcli.bat** or **csmcli.sh** file to start a **csmcli** session in interactive mode. The default directory paths to these executable files for each operating system are provided in the following table.

Operating system	Default directory
z/OS	<i>path_prefix</i> /opt/IBM/CSM/CLI/
Windows	C:\Program Files\IBM\CSM\CLI
Linux or AIX	<i>path_prefix</i> /opt/IBM/CSM/CLI

On Linux systems, you must enter the CLI program name (**csmcli**) in lowercase. Command input can be either lowercase, uppercase, or mixed case, unless specific command parameters require case sensitivity.

Each CLI command issues a return value and message. Warning and informational messages are written to the standard output stream (stdout). Error messages are written to the standard error stream (stderr). If a syntax error occurs while one of the commands in the script is running, the script exits at the point of failure and returns to the system prompt.

Start an interactive CLI session

This example illustrates how to start a CLI session if you did not set up an authentication configuration file.

```
shell> csmcli -username admin -password admin
```

Start an interactive CLI session using -saf

This example illustrates how to start a CLI session using the **-saf** parameter for authentication and run a command, simultaneously.

```
shell> csmcli -saf mkssess -cptype mmf0fb test1
```

Set the server and port for the management server

This example illustrates how to set the server domain name to localhost and port number to 5110 for the local management server.

```
shell> csmcli -server localhost -port 5110
```

Run several commands by using a script file

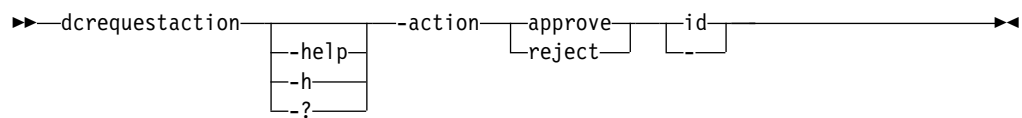
This example illustrates how to run several commands by using a script file name cli_script.txt.

```
shell> csmcli -script cli_script.txt
```

dcrequestaction

Use the **dcrequestaction** command to run a specified scheduled task.
Tip: To list all of the Dual Control requests, use the **lsdcrequests** command.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

id | -

Specifies the ID for the Dual Control request that will be approved or rejected.

Example: Approving Dual Control request 2

The following command approves the Dual Control request with an ID of 2, for issuing a Flash command to a session.

```
dcrequestaction -quiet -action approve 2
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1026I [Jan 24, 2019 10:42:15 AM] The Flash command in the  
8kFC session completed.
```

Example: Rejecting Dual Control request 3

The following command rejects the Dual Control request with an ID of 3.

```
csmcli> dcrequestaction -quiet -action reject 3
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR2605I [Jan 24, 2019 10:43:02 AM] Dual Control notification request  
3 was rejected by user bob with the following reason: rejected from cli.
```

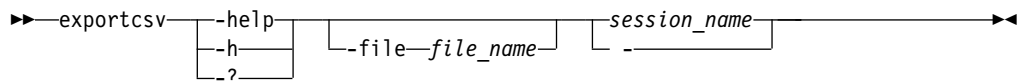
exportcsv

Use the **exportcsv** command to export the copy sets in a session to a comma-separated values (CSV) file or to the console. You are prompted to overwrite the CSV file if it exists.

For IBM® DS8000® and IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage systems, the volume ID is provided in the CSV file.

For other storage systems, the volume ID is provided in the CSV file if the volume does not have a name. If the volume has a name, the name is provided.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-file file_name

Specifies the name and path of the CSV file. If you do not specify this parameter, the CSV output is displayed on the command-line interface.

session_name | -

Specifies the name of the session from which you are exporting the copy sets.

Example: Exporting copy sets to a file

The following command exports the copy sets in session `session1` to the file `c:\session1.csv`.

```
csmdi> exportcsv -file c:\session1.csv session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Exporting...
IWN6506I The export copy set command for session session1 succeeded. The
file was exported to the path: c:\session1.csv.
```

Example: Exporting copy sets to standard out

The following command exports the copy sets in session `session1` to standard output:

```
csmdi> exportcsv session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Exporting...
#203
#Metro Global Mirror w/ Practice
#Aug 25 1:44:16 PM

H1,H2,H3,I3,J3
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500,DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1500,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1500,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1505,
```



```

DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:150A
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1501,DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1501,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1501,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1506,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:150B
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1502,DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1502,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1502,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1507,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:150C
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1503,DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1503,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1503,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1508,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:150D
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1504,DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1504,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1504,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1509,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:150E
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1500,DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1505,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1600,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1605,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:160A
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1501,DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1506,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1601,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1606,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:160B
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1502,DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1507,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1602,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1607,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:160C
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1503,DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1508,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1603,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1608,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:160D
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1504,DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1509,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1604,DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1609,
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:160E

```

IWNR1301I The export of a copy set for session session1 succeeded.

Example: Exporting copy sets to standard out where the volume name is provided in the output

The following command exports the copy sets in the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Global Mirror Failover/Failback session xiv_gm_1 to standard output.

```
csmdi> exportcsv xiv_gm_1
```

The following output is returned:

```

Exporting...
#xiv_gm_1
#Global Mirror Failover/Failback
##Aug 25 9:48:26 AM

H1,H2
XIV:VOL:7803448:myvolume1,XIV:VOL:7804988:myvolume2

```

IWNR1301I The export of a copy set for session xiv_gm_1 succeeded.

exportgmdata

Use the **exportgmdata** command to export data for a Global Mirror role pair to a comma-separated value (CSV) file. You can then use the data in the CSV file to analyze trends in your storage environment that affect your recovery point objective (RPO).

Attention: Because historical data is purged when you delete a session or set the management server as the standby server, export data before you complete these actions.

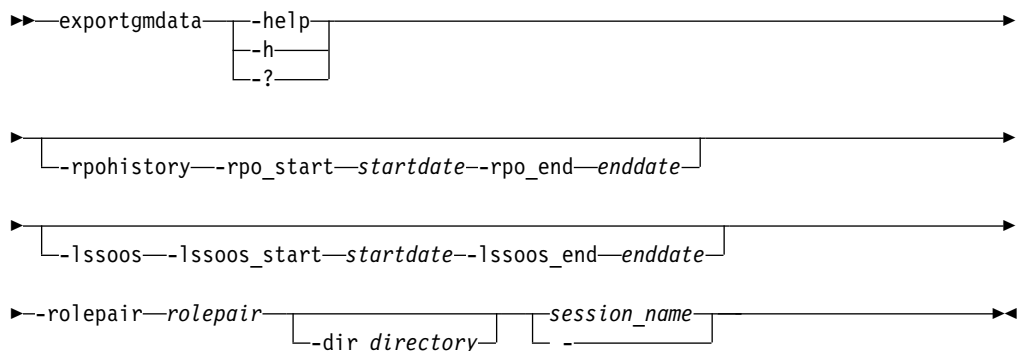
This command can create two types of CSV files: a file that contains data about the RPO and a file that contains data about logical subsystem (LSS) out-of-sync tracks. You can use both files to better analyze trends.

For example, the file that contains data for the RPO might show that the RPO threshold is often exceeded on a particular day and time. You can then view the file that contains data for LSS out-of-sync tracks to see whether a particular LSS or set of LSSs have high out-of-sync track values for that day and time.

Syntax

This command is available for the following storage systems:

- Model 800
- IBM® DS8000®



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-rpohistory

Specifies that the CSV file contains data for the RPO. The data includes the average RPO for the dates that you select and information that is related to the formation of consistency groups.

RPO data is only available for DS8000 sessions using Global Mirror and Global Mirror with Change Volume sessions.

-rpo_start startdate

Specifies the start date for the RPO data that is in the CSV file. The format is yyyy-mm-dd.

By default, the date range maximum is 31 days of data.

This parameter is required if the **-rpohistory** parameter is present.

-rpo_end enddate

Specifies the end date for the RPO data that is in the CSV file. The format is yyyy-mm-dd.

This parameter is required if the **-rpohistory** parameter is present.

-lsssoos

Specifies that the export file contains data for the out-of-sync tracks in that are in the LSSs.

Data for LSS out-of-sync tracks is only available for DS8000 storage systems.

-lsssoos_start *startdate*

Specifies the start date for the LSS out-of-sync track data that is in the CSV file. The format is yyyy-mm-dd.

By default, the date range maximum is seven days of data.

This parameter is required if the **-lsssoos** parameter is present.

-lsssoos_end *enddate*

Specifies the end date for the LSS out-of-sync track data that is in the CSV file. The format is yyyy-mm-dd.

This parameter is required if the **-lsssoos** parameter is present.

-rolepair *rolepair*

Specifies the role pair for which you are exporting the data.

-dir *directory*

Specifies the output directory for the CSV files on the system from which exportgmdata is run. This parameter is optional and if not provided, the files will be created on the server.

session_name | -

Specifies the name of the session for which you are exporting the data.

Example: Exporting RPO data to an export file

The following command exports RPO data to the file gmsession1H1-J2rpo2012-02-28-16-18-25.csv. The confirmation message contains the path to the file.

```
csmdi> exportgmdata -rpohistory -rpo_start 2012-02-01 -rpo_end 2012-02-28  
-rolepair h1-j2 gmsession1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1262I The data for session gmsession1 was exported.  
The CSV file is located on the server at: C:\Program Files\IBM\CSM\  
\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\exportdir\  
gmsession1H1-J2rpo2012-02-28-16-18-25.csv
```

Example: Exporting LSS out-of-sync track data to an export file

The following command exports LSS out-of-sync track data to the file gmsession1H1-J2lsssoos2012-02-28-16-45-46.csv. The confirmation message contains the path to the file.

```
csmdi> exportgmdata -lsssoos -lsssoos_start 2012-02-01 -lsssoos_end 2012-02-08  
-rolepair h1-j2 gmsession1
```

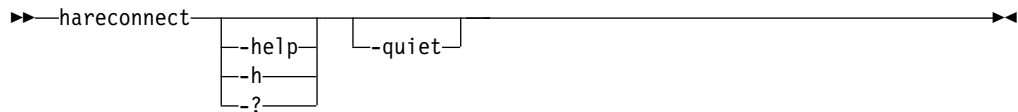
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1262I The data for session gmsession1 was exported.  
The CSV file is located on the server at: C:\Program Files\IBM\CSM\  
\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\exportdir\  
gmsession1H1-J2lsssoos2012-02-28-16-45-46.csv
```

hareconnect

Use the **hareconnect** command to reconnect the active and standby servers for high availability (HA).

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Example: Reconnecting the active and standby management servers

The following command reconnects the active and standby management servers.

```
csmcli> hareconnect
```

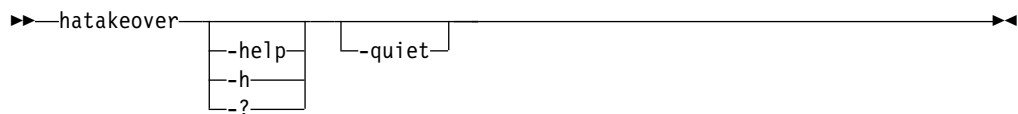
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR3052I  Successfully reconnected with the high availability
server csm1.storage.tucson.ibm.com from the server csm2.storage.tucson.ibm.com.
```

hatakeover

Use the **hatakeover** command to change the standby server to the active server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Description

Note: For the several commands that implement high-availability with the definition of a standby server, the standby server must be at the same level of the copy services management code as the active server.

Example: Changing the standby server to the active server

The following command changes the standby server to the active server.

```
csmdi> hatakeover
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR3063I Successfully issued the takeover to the standby server  
csm2.storage.tucson.ibm.com with the active HA server  
csm1.storage.tucson.ibm.com.
```

importcsv

Use the **importcsv** command to parse a comma-separated values (CSV) file to create copy sets for a session.

The CSV file is parsed and copy sets are created from the data in the file. The CSV file must contain data for all the necessary roles in the session for which the copy sets are being created.

Syntax

```
►►importcsv [-help] [-quiet] -file file_name session_name ►►
```

Diagram illustrating the syntax of the **importcsv** command. The command is shown as `importcsv` followed by two optional flags in brackets: `[-help]` and `[-quiet]`. These are followed by a required parameter `-file`, then `file_name`, and finally `session_name`. The entire command structure is enclosed in a box with arrows at both ends.

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-file file_name

A required parameter that specifies the name of the CSV file.

session_name | -

Specifies the name of the session for which you are creating copy sets.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Importing a CSV file for a session

The following CSV file is named `session1.csv`:

```
#session1,  
#FlashCopy,  
#Oct 2 10:03:18 AM  
  
H1,T1  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1004,DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1104  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1011,DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1101  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1005,DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1105
```

Example: Importing a file into a session without prompting for a confirmation

The following command imports the file into the session session2 without prompting for a confirmation:

```
csmdi> importcsv -quiet -file session1.csv session2
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR2001I The pair was successfully created in session session2 for  
copy set  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1004 with source DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1004 and target  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1104.
```

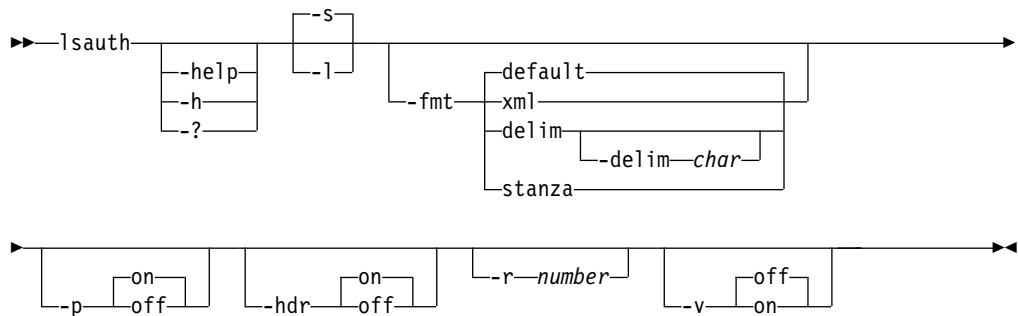
```
IWNR2001I The pair was successfully created in session session2 for copy set  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1011 with source DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1011 and target  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1101.
```

```
IWNR2001I The pair was successfully created in session session2 for copy set  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1005 with source DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1005 and target  
DS8000:2107.FRLL1:VOL:1105.
```

lsauth

Use the **lsauth** command to list the name, authorization level, and session permission for each user or user group.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Displays default information about each user and user group, including the name, classification, and role.

-l Displays detailed information for each user and user group, including:

Column label	Details
User name	The user name for each authorization and session that the user has permission to manage.
Classification	The type: User, Group, LDAP user, LDAP group, or Unknown user.

Column label	Details
Role	The role: Administrator, Operator, Monitor, or User Administrator.
Session	The session name if the role is Operator, All Sessions if the user was set to manage all sessions, or a dash (-) if the role is Administrator or Monitor.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

Example: Listing all users and user groups

The following command lists all currently defined users and user groups.

```
csmcli> lsauth
```

The following output is returned:

```
Name      Classification Role
=====
csmuser User              Administrator
```

Example: Listing detailed authorization information

The following command lists detailed information about the user csmuser.

```
csmcli> lsauth -l
```

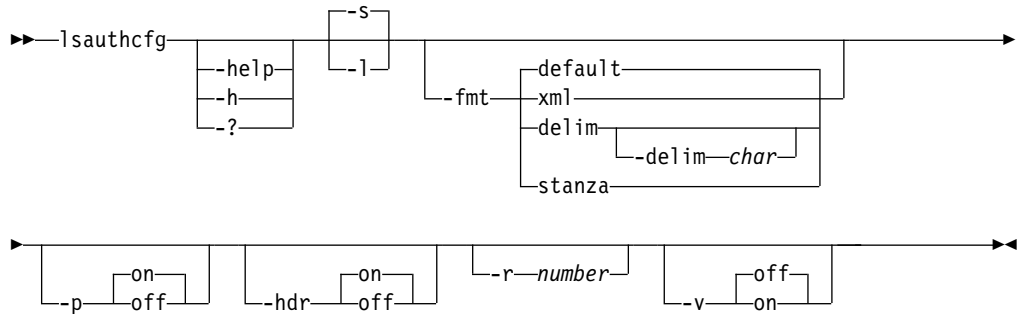
The following output is returned:

```
Name      Classification Role      Session
=====
csmuser User              Administrator -
```

lsauthcfg

Use the **lsauthcfg** command to show the configuration being used for server base authentication, if any.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Displays default information about each user and user group, including the name, classification, and role.

-l Displays detailed information for each user and user group, including:

Column label	Details
Server	The domain or IP address of the LDAP or Active Directory server being used for user authentication.
Port	The LDAP or Active Directory server port number.
Role	The role of authentication server: Primary or Failover.

Column label	Details
Type	The type of authentication server: LDAP or Active Directory.
BindDN	The binding DN of the user configured to access the LDAP server.
BaseDN	The LDAP base DN
Username	The username being used to access the Active Directory domain.
Domain	The domain of the user represented by the username field.
Custom	If 'Yes', indicates the current LDAP or Active Directory configuration was not created using the provided API. It was manually created by the user and extends a basic LDAP configuration by including additional parameters. If 'No', indicates the configuration is a basic configuration.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { **on** | **off** }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

Example: Listing the configured LDAP servers

The following command lists the LDAP servers that are configured for user authentication.

```
csmdi> lsauthcfg
```

The following output is returned:

Server	Port	Role	Type
tb080-ui.storage.tucson.ibm.com	1389	Primary	LDAP
test.ldap.server	1234	Failover	LDAP
test.ldap2.server	5678	Failover	LDAP

Example: Listing the configured Active Directory server

The following command lists the Active Directory servers that are configured for user authentication.

```
csmdi> lsauthcfg -l -fmt stanza
```

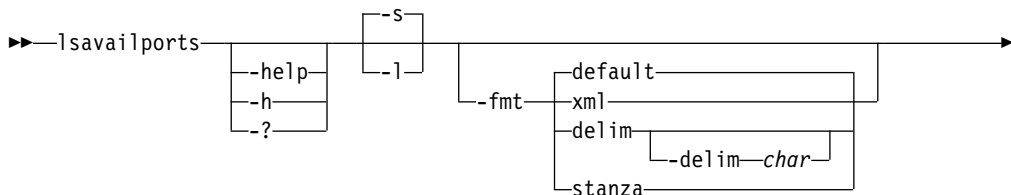
The following output is returned:

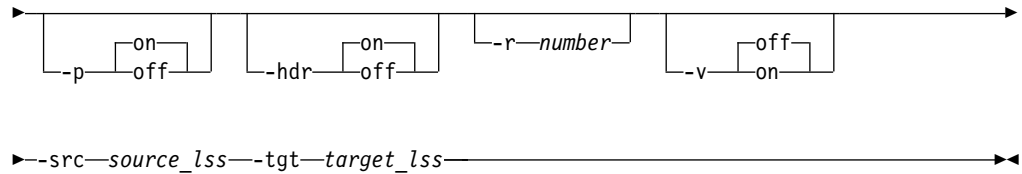
Server	nestorman.tuc.stglabs.ibm.com
Port	389
Role	Primary
Type	Active Directory
BindDN	cn=Administrator,cn=users,dc=HMIADDOM,dc=COM
BaseDN	cn=users,dc=HMIADDOM,dc=COM
Username	Administrator
Domain	HMIADDOM.COM
Custom	No

lsavailports

Use the **lsavailports** command to display the port configuration types for a specific path.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s

Displays default information, including the source and target LSS and the type of port configuration.

-l

Displays detailed information for each port, including:

Column label	Details
Source	Origin of the path; for ESS, an LSS.
Target	Target of the path; for ESS, an LSS.
Type	The configuration of the port (such as Enterprise Systems Connection [ESCON] or Fibre Channel).

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-src *source_lss*

Specifies the source LSS (for example, ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:21).

-tgt *target_lss*

Specifies the target LSS (for example, ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:21).

Example: Listing port configuration for paths

The following command lists the port configuration used for each path with source LSS DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15 and target LSS ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15.

```
csmdi> lsavailports -src DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15 -tgt ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15
```

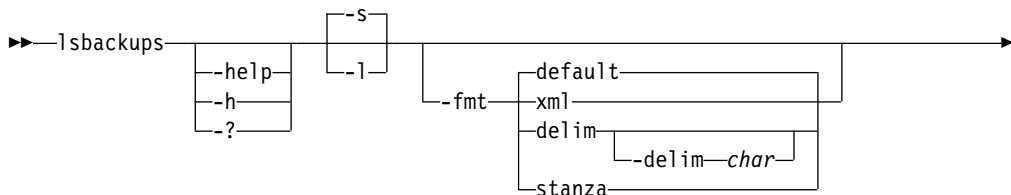
The following output is returned:

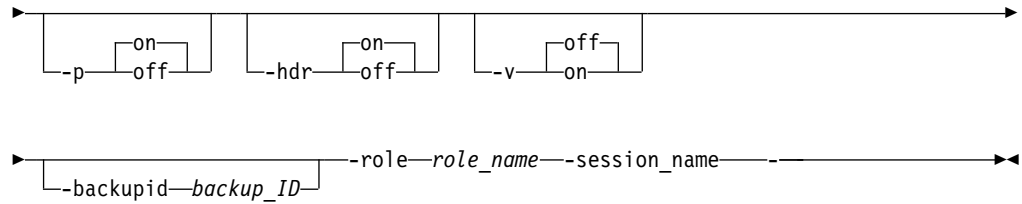
Source	Target	Type
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0330	ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15.0x008C	Fibre Channel
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0110	ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15.0x000C	Fibre Channel
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0110	ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15.0x008C	Fibre Channel
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0110	ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15.0x0088	Fibre Channel
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0110	ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15.0x0028	Fibre Channel

lsbackups

Use the **lsbackups** command to display the backups for a specified session and role.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s

Displays default information, including the source and target LSS and the type of port configuration.

-l

Displays detailed information for each port, including:

Column label	Details
Backup ID	Identification for the backup
Time	Timestamp for when the backup was taken
Session Name	The name of the session
Role	The name of the role backed up
isValid	Whether the backup is considered valid
Last Result	The last result of the backup
Copy Sets	The number of copysets in the backup

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where `char` represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-backupid backup_ID

Specifies the id number for the backup. This value is used to filter the list of backups returned. Only the backup with the given id number will be displayed.

-role role_name

Specifies that only backups that are associated with the specified role name are displayed.

-session_name | -

Specifies the name of the session used to display backups.

Example: Listing backups for a given session

The following command lists the backups used for a session named MyBackupSess and role H1.

```
csmdi> lsbackups -role h1 MyBackupSess
```

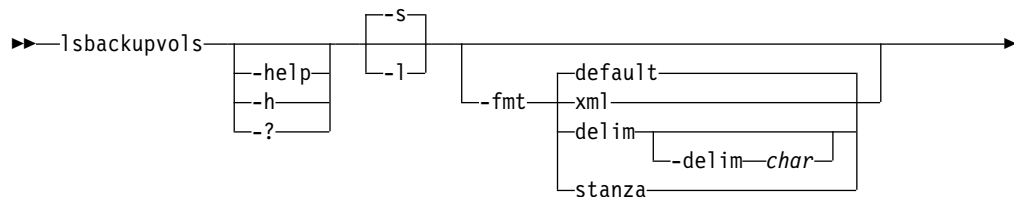
The following output is returned:

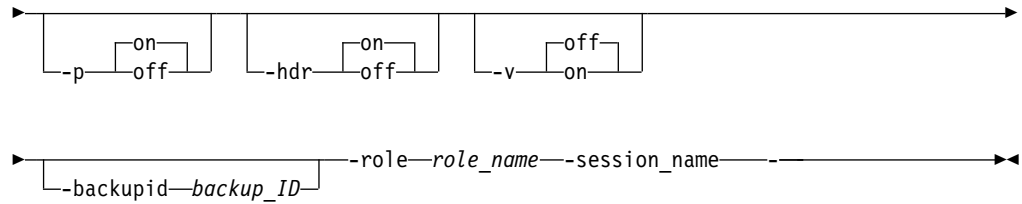
Backup ID	Time	Session Name	Role	isValid	Last Result	Copy Sets
47676786	Feb 19, 2018 10:25:18	MySafeGuard	H1	yes	IWNRxxxI	5
67676786	Feb 18, 2018 10:25:18	MySafeGuard	H1	yes	IWNRxxxI	3
77676786	Feb 17, 2018 10:25:18	MySafeGuard	H1	yes	IWNRxxxI	3
87676786	Feb 16, 2018 10:25:18	MySafeGuard	H1	no	IWNRxxxE	3
97676786	Feb 15, 2018 10:25:18	MySafeGuard	H1	yes	IWNRxxxI	3

lsbackupvols

Use the **lsbackupvols** command to display the volumes included in a given backup for the specified session and role.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s

Displays default information, including the source and target LSS and the type of port configuration.

-l

Displays detailed information for each port, including:

Column label	Details
Backup ID	Identification for the backup
Volume ID	Volume identification
Volume Name	User defined name for the volume
Time	Timestamp for when the backup was taken
isError	Is there an error associated with this volume on the backup
Last Result	The last result of the backup

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

- on** Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.
- off** Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.
- hdr { on | off }**
Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:
 - on** Displays the table header. This is the default value.
 - off** Hides the table header.
- v { on | off }**
Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:
 - on** Enables verbose mode.
 - off** Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.
- backupid *backup_ID***
Specifies the id number for the backup.
- role *role_name***
Specifies that only backups that are associated with the specified role name are displayed.
- session_name | -**
Specifies the name of the session used to display backups.

Example: Listing volumes for a given backup

The following command lists the volumes associated with a given backup for a session named MyBackupSess and role H1.

```
csmdi> lsbackupvols -role h1 -backupID 47676786 MyBackupSess
```

The following output is returned:

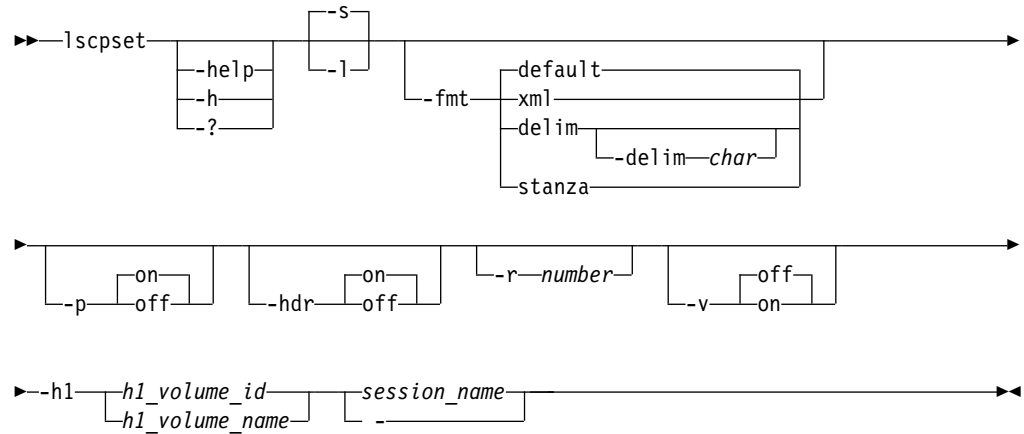
Volume ID	Volume Name	Backup ID	Time	isError	Last Result
DS8000:2107.ZA851:VOL:1000	CSM000	47676786	Feb 19, 2018 10:25:18	no	IWNRxxxI
DS8000:2107.ZA851:VOL:1001	CSM001	47676786	Feb 18, 2018 10:25:18	no	IWNRxxxI
DS8000:2107.ZA851:VOL:1002	CSM002	47676786	Feb 17, 2018 10:25:18	no	IWNRxxxI
DS8000:2107.ZA851:VOL:1003	CSM003	47676786	Feb 16, 2018 10:25:18	yes	IWNRxxxE
DS8000:2107.ZA851:VOL:1004	CSM004	47676786	Feb 15, 2018 10:25:18	on	IWNRxxxI

lscpset

Use the **lscpset** command to list the IDs and number of volumes for the copy sets that are in a session.

Tip: Use the **showcpset** command to list the volumes in a copy set and use the **lsvol** command to display the status of volumes in a copy set.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s | -l

Displays the following information.

Column Label	Details
H1 Volume ID	The ID of the volume at host site 1. This ID is used to identify a copy set in a session. The volume ID is displayed regardless of whether you provide the volume ID or name for the -h1 parameter.
Session	The name of the session that contains the copy set.
Volumes	The number of volumes that are associated with the copy set.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim char**, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

- on** Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.
- off** Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

- on** Displays the table header. This is the default value.
- off** Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

- on** Enables verbose mode.
- off** Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-h1 {h1_volume_id | h1_volume_name}

Specifies the volume at host site 1.

For IBM DS8000 and IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage systems, use the volume ID for this parameter.

For other storage systems, you can use the volume ID or name for this parameter.

session_name | -

Specifies the name of the session that contains the copy sets.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing the IDs of all copy sets that are in a session

The following command lists the volume IDs and the number of volumes that are associated with the copy sets in a session called session1:

```
csmdi> lscpset session1
```

The following output is returned.

H1 Volume ID	Session	Volumes
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500	session1	5
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1501	session1	5
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1502	session1	5
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1503	session1	5
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1504	session1	5
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1500	session1	5
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1501	session1	5
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1502	session1	5
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1503	session1	5
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1504	session1	5

Example: Listing a specific copy set that is in a session

The following command lists the number of volumes for a specific copy set in the session fc1. In this example, the volume name CSMRegr_vol08 is provided for the copy set in the command. The corresponding volume ID is shown in the output.

```
lscpset -h1 STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:TPCRTBIRD2:CSMRegr_vol08 fc1
```

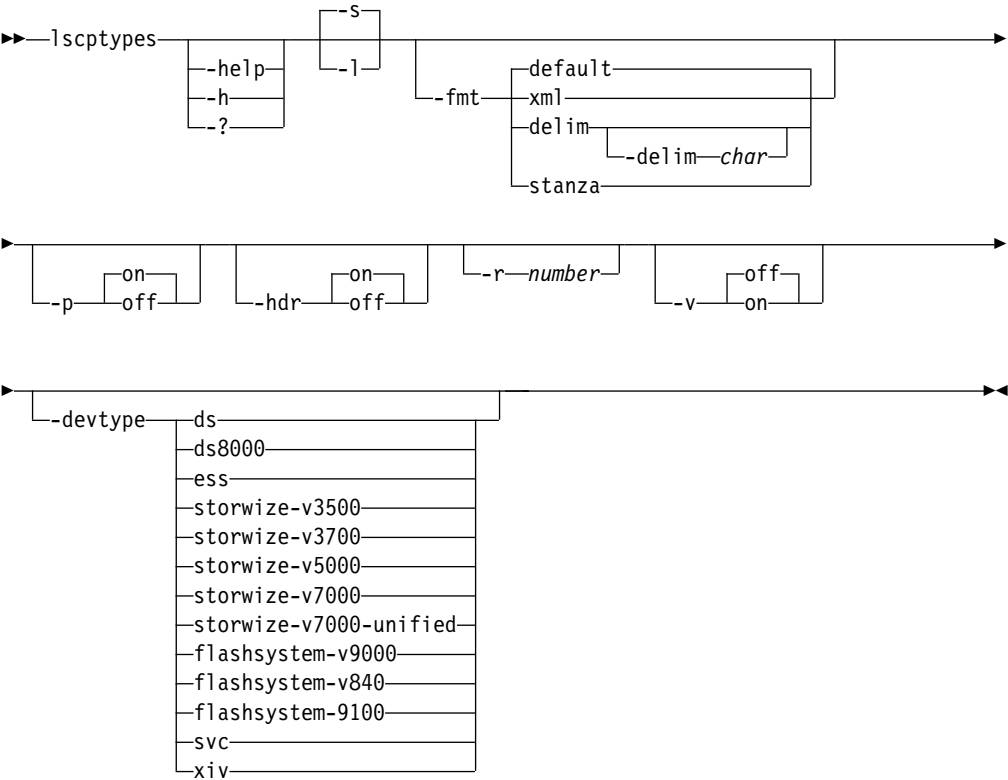
The following output is returned:

H1 Volume ID	Session	Volumes
=====	=====	=====
STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:TPCRTBIRD2:7	fc1	2

lscptypes

Use the **lscptypes** command to display the session types and the storage systems that you can use with the session types.

Syntax



Parameters

- help | -h | -?**
Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.
- s | -l**
Displays the following information.

Column label	Details
Copy Type	The abbreviated name of the session type. For example, mgm is an abbreviation for Metro Global Mirror. The abbreviated session type name is used as a parameter value for the mkssess command.
Full Name	The full name of the session type. For example, Metro Global Mirror.
Device Types	The storage systems that can be used with the session type. The values are: DS8000, ESS, SAN Volume Controller, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM-V840, FLASHSYSTEM-9100 and XIV.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-devtype { ds | ess | storwize-v3500 | storwize-v3700 | storwize-v5000 | storwize-v7000 | flashsystem-v9000 | flashsystem-v840 | svc | flashsystem-a9000 | flashsystem-9100 | xiv }

Specifies the session types that are available for specific storage system types.

The parameter values are:

- **ds**: IBM DS8000
- **ds8000**: IBM DS8000
- **ess**: IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- **storwize-v3500**: IBM Storwize V3500
- **storwize-v3700**: IBM Storwize V3700
- **storwize-v5000**: IBM Storwize V5000
- **storwize-v7000**: IBM Storwize V7000
- **storwize-v7000-unified**: IBM Storwize V7000 Unified
- **flashsystem-v9000**: IBM FlashSystem V9000
- **flashsystem-v840**: IBM FlashSystem V840
- **flashsystem-9100**: IBM FlashSystem 9100
- **svc**: IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller
- **xiv**: FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

Example: Listing all session types and storage systems

The following command lists all the session types that you can use.

```
csmcli> lscptypes
```

The following output is returned:

Copy Type	Full Name	Device Types
fc	FlashCopy	DS8000, ESS, SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840, FLASHSYSTEM 9100
snap	Snapshot	XIV
mmsd	Metro Mirror Single Direction	DS8000, ESS, SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840, FLASHSYSTEM 9100
mmfofb	Metro Mirror Failover/Failback	DS8000, ESS, SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840, FLASHSYSTEM 9100
mmfofbxiv	Metro Mirror Failover/Failback	XIV
pmm	Metro Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Practice	DS8000, ESS
pmmsvc	Metro Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Practice	SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840, FLASHSYSTEM 9100
gmsd	Global Mirror Single Direction	DS8000, ESS
gmsdsvc	Global Mirror Single Direction	SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840, FLASHSYSTEM 9100
gmfofb	Global Mirror	DS8000, ESS

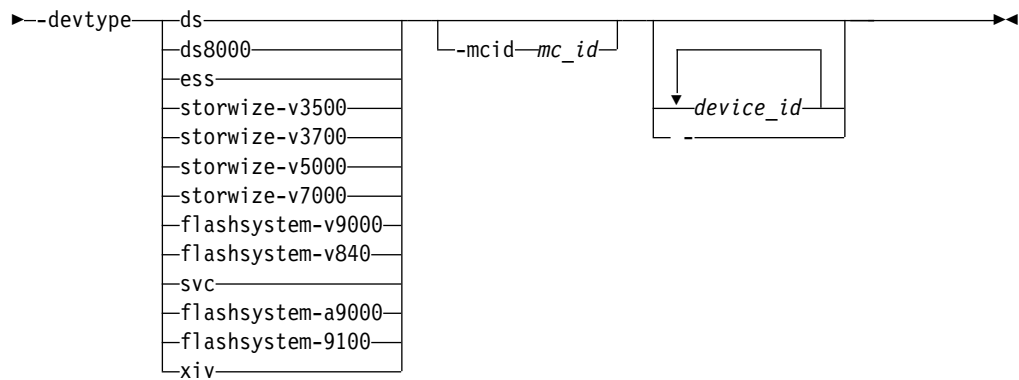
Failover/Failback		
gmfofbsvc	Global Mirror Failover/Failback	SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840 FLASHSYSTEM 9100
gmfofbxiv	Global Mirror Failover/Failback	XIV
pgm	Global Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Practice	DS8000, ESS
pgmsvc	Global Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Practice	SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840 FLASHSYSTEM 9100
pgm2s	Global Mirror Either Direction w/ Two Site Practice	DS8000, ESS
mgm	Metro Global Mirror	DS8000, ESS
pmgm	Metro Global Mirror w/ Practice	DS8000, ESS
mm_mm	Metro Mirror - Metro Mirror	DS8000
gmcvsvc	Global Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Change Volumes	SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840 FLASHSYSTEM 9100
mm_gm	Metro Mirror - Global Mirror	DS8000
mm_gmp	Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Practice	DS8000
mm_gm_s3gm	Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Site 3	DS8000
mm_gm_4s	Global Mirror Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Site 4 Replication	DS8000

Example: Listing session types for IBM DS8000 storage systems

```
csmdi> lscptypes -devtype ds
```

The following output is returned:

Copy Type	Full Name	Device Types
fc	FlashCopy	DS8000, ESS, SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840, FLASHSYSTEM 9100
mmsd	Metro Mirror Single Direction	DS8000, ESS, SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840, FLASHSYSTEM 9100
mmfofb	Metro Mirror Failover/Failback	DS8000, ESS, SVC, STORWIZE-V7000, STORWIZE-V7000-Unified, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V3500, FLASHSYSTEM V9000, FLASHSYSTEM V840, FLASHSYSTEM 9100
pmm	Metro Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Practice	DS8000, ESS
gmsd	Global Mirror Single Direction	DS8000, ESS
gmfofb	Global Mirror Failover/Failback	DS8000, ESS
pgm	Global Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Practice	DS8000, ESS
pgm2s	Global Mirror Either Direction w/ Two Site Practice	DS8000, ESS
mgm	Metro Global Mirror	DS8000, ESS



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s

Displays default information for each storage system, including the device ID, connection type, device type, and local server connection status.

-l

Displays the following detailed information for each storage system.

Column Label	Details
Device ID	The name, nickname, or model-serial-manufacturer of the storage system.
Connection Type	The connection type. The values are: Direct, HMC, or ZOS Connection.
Device Type	The storage system type. The values are: , DS8000, ESS, SAN Volume Controller, STORWIZE-V3500, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V7000, FLASHSYSTEM-V9000, FLASHSYSTEM-V840, FLASHSYSTEM-A9000, FLASHSYSTEM-9100, and XIV.
Device IP Address	The IP address or host name for the nodes or clusters that are used by the storage system. If there are multiple nodes or clusters, the values in this column are delimited by a semicolon. For example, <i>ip_address;ip_address</i> .
Local Server Connection	The state of the direct connections to the local management server. If there are multiple servers, the values in this column are delimited by a semicolon. For example, <i>cluster0_status;cluster1_status</i> .
Remote Server Connection	The state of the direct connections to the remote management server. If there are multiple servers, the values in this column are delimited by a semicolon. For example, <i>cluster0_status;cluster1_status</i> .
Connection ID	The ID for the Hardware Management Console (HMC) or IBM z/OS host system that is used to connect the storage system.
Location	The location of the storage system.
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the storage system.

Column Label	Details
Device Name	The user-defined name of the storage system.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-devtype { ds | ess | storwize-v3500 | storwize-v3700 | storwize-v5000 | storwize-v7000 | flashsystem-v9000 | flashsystem-v840 | svc | flashsystem-a9000 | flashsystem-9100 | xiv }

Specifies the type of storage system. The parameter values are:

- **ds**: IBM DS8000
- **ds8000**: IBM DS8000

- **ess**: IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- **storwize-v3500**: IBM Storwize V3500
- **storwize-v3700**: IBM Storwize V3700
- **storwize-v5000**: IBM Storwize V5000
- **storwize-v7000**: IBM Storwize V7000 or IBM Storwize V7000 Unified
- **flashsystem-v9000**: IBM FlashSystem V9000
- **flashsystem-v840**: IBM FlashSystem V840
- **svc**: IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller
- **flashsystem-a9000**: IBM FlashSystem A9000
- **flashsystem-9100**: IBM FlashSystem 9100
- **xiv**: FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

-mcid *mc_id*

Specifies storage systems that are connected through a specific management console.

device_id... | -

Specifies one or more storage systems by ID. The storage system ID is in the element ID format (for example, `ess:box:2105.fca57`). Separate multiple storage system IDs with a space.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing all storage systems

The following command lists information for all storage systems.

```
csmcli> lsdevice -devtype ds
```

The following output is returned:

Device ID	Connection Type	Device Type	Local Server Connection
DS8000:BOX:1234.56789	Direct	DS8000	Connected;Connected
DS8000:BOX:1234.56789	ZOS Connection	DS8000	Connected
DS8000:BOX:1234.AB123	HMC	DS8000	Connected;Connected

Example: Listing detailed attributes for all storage systems

The following command lists detailed information for all storage systems.

```
csmcli> lsdevice -l -devtype ds -fmt stanza
```

The following output is returned:

Device ID	DS8000:BOX:1234.56789
Connection Type	Direct
Device Type	DS8000
Device IP Address	-
Local Server Connection	Connected;Connected
Remote Server Connection	-
Connection ID	-
Location	None
Manufacturer	IBM
Device Name	-
Device ID	DS8000:BOX:1234.56789
Connection Type	ZOS Connection
Device Type	DS8000
Device IP Address	-

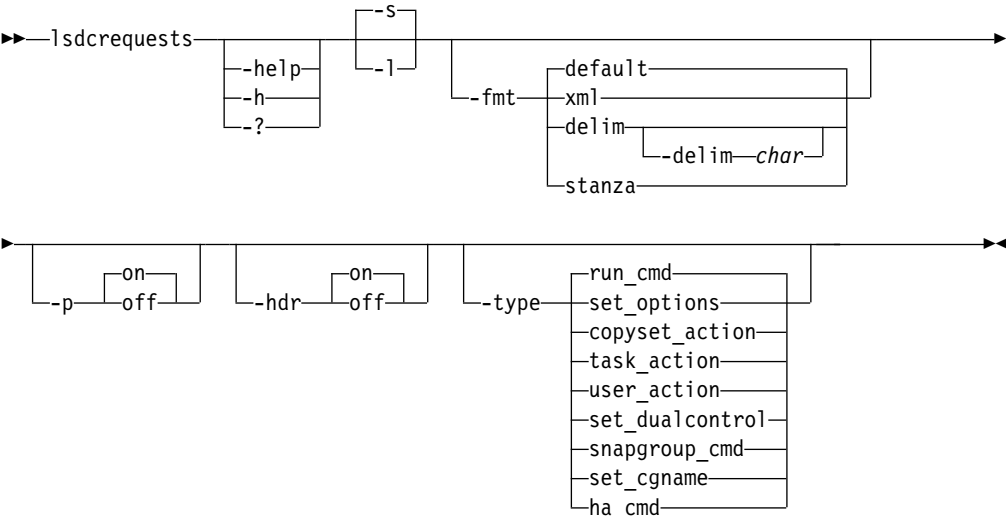
```
Local Server Connection Connected
Remote Server Connection -
Connection ID             ZOS:abc68.storage.sacramento.xyz.com:5858
Location                  None
Manufacturer              IBM
Device Name               -

Device ID                 DS8000:BOX:1234.AB123
Connection Type           HMC
Device Type               DS8000
Device IP Address         -
Local Server Connection   Connected;Connected
Remote Server Connection -
Connection ID             HMC:Stg8k11.storage.sacramento.xyz.com
Location                  None
Manufacturer              IBM
Device Name               -
```

lsdcrequests

Use the **lsdcrequests** command to display all Dual Control requests created by or requiring approval from the current user.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-l | -s

Displays detailed information for each location, including:

Column label	Details
ID	Identification for the Dual Control request
Type	Type of Dual Control request
Requesting User	User requesting the change
Time	Time when the request was created

Column label	Details
Summary	Summary of the requested event

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on

Enables verbose mode.

off

Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-type { run_cmd | set_options | copyset_action | task_action | user_action | set_dualcontrol | snapgroup_cmd | set_cgname | ha_cmd }

Specifies that only requests with the specified type are displayed.

Example: Listing all requests visible to the current user

```
csmcli> lsdcrequests -l
```

The following output is returned:

ID	Type	Requesting User	Time
1	RUN_CMD	bob	2018-07-23 12:20:00.008-0500

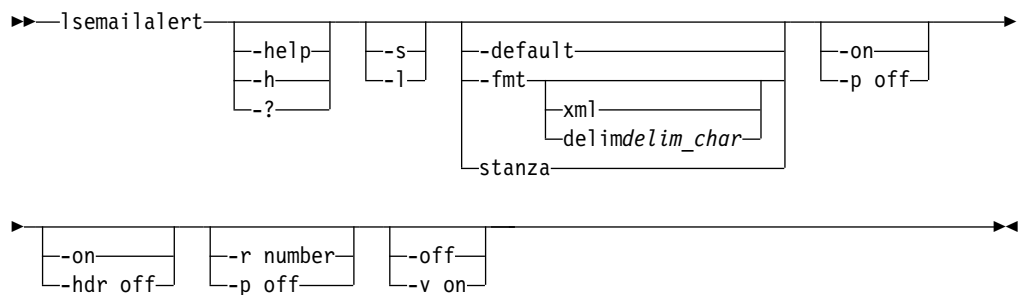
Summary

IWNR2608I [Jan 30, 2019 1:36:37 PM] User csmadmin requested to enable Dual Control at Wed Jan 30 13:34:40 PST 2019.

lsemialert

Use the **lsemialert** command to show the recipient list of e-mail addresses to send e-mail alerts to.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-recipient email_address[,email_address]

Specifies the e-mail addresses to be added to the alert recipient list. Multiple e-mail addresses can be added using a comma separated list.

-l | -s

Displays details for recipient list, including the following information.

Column label	Details
E-mail Address	The e-mail address alerts will be sent to.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim char**, where *char* represents the character that you want

to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

Example: Listing the recipient list of e-mail addresses to send e-mail alerts to

```
csmcli> lsemailalert
```

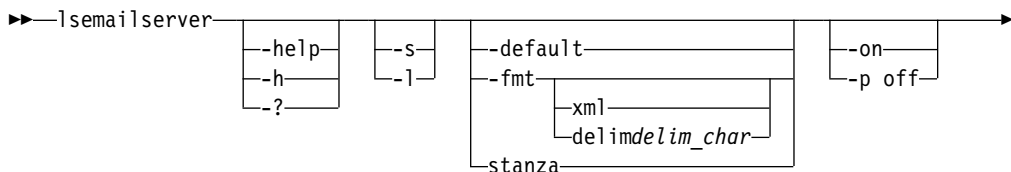
The following output is returned:

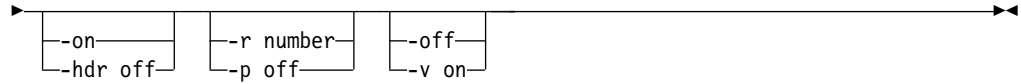
```
E-mail Address
=====
user2@us.ibm.com
user@us.ibm.com
```

lsemailserver

Use the **lsemailserver** command to show the configuration being used for e-mail alerts, if any.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-recipient email_address[,email_address]

Specifies the e-mail addresses to be added to the alert recipient list. Multiple e-mail addresses can be added using a comma separated list.

-l | -s

Displays details for the recipient list, including the following information.

Column label	Details
Server	The hostname or IP address of the SMTP server being used for e-mail alerts.
Port	The SMTP server port number.
Reply-To	The reply-to e-mail address used for e-mails sent.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

Example: Listing the SMTP server configuration used for e-mail alerts

```
csmdi> lsmailserver
```

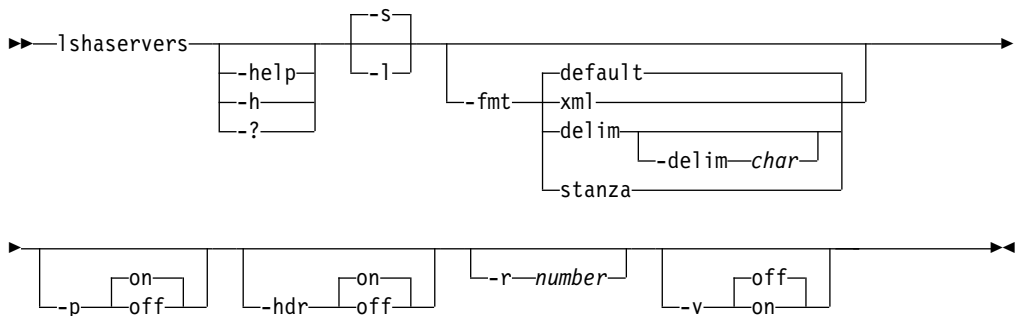
The following output is returned:

```
Server          Port Reply-To
=====
na.relay.ibm.com 25   user@us.ibm.com
```

lshaservers

Use the **lshaservers** command to show the status of each active and standby management server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-l | -s

Displays detailed information for each management server, including:

Column label	Details
Server	The domain or IP address of the management server

Column label	Details
Role	The role of management server: Active or Standby
Status	The status of the relationship
Port	<p>The standby management server port number. This port is used for communication between the active and standby management server.</p> <p>This port number is initially set at installation time. Important: The port number for the standby management server must be the same on both the management server and the standby management server in a high-availability relationship. If you change the standby management server port number on either the management server or the standby management server, you must also change the port number on the other server.</p>

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { **on** | **off** }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

Example: Listing management server status

The following command lists the status of the active and standby management servers.

```
csmdi> lshaservers
```

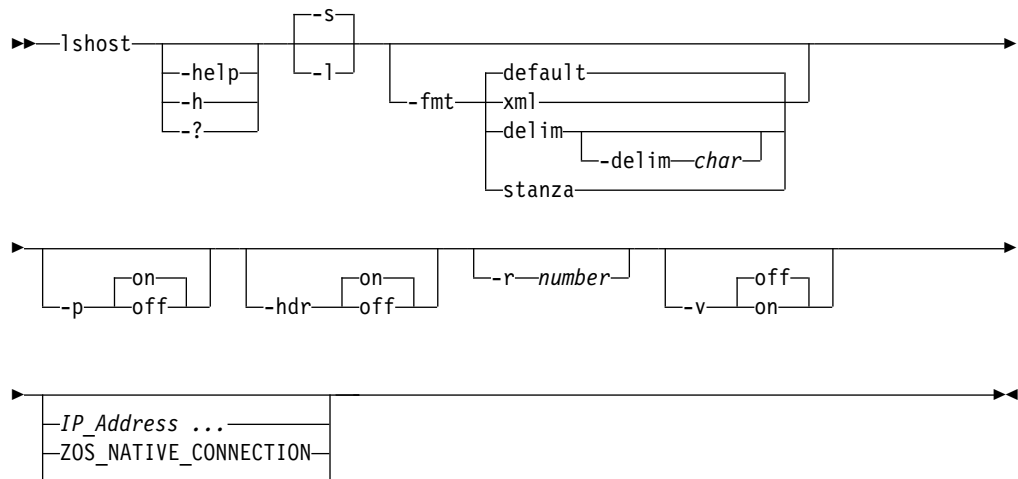
The following output is returned:

Server	Role	Status	Port
system1.csm.example.com	ACTIVE	Synchronized	5120
system2.csm.example.com	STANDBY	Synchronized	5120

lshost

Use the **lshost** command to view host systems that are added to the copy services management server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Specifies that default information for each host system is displayed.

-l Specifies that the following detailed information for each host system is displayed:

Column Label	Details
Host System	<p>If the IBM z/OS host system is the system on which the copy services management server is installed, ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION is shown in this column.</p> <p>For AIX and z/OS host systems that are connected by using an IP address or host name, the IP address or host name is shown.</p>
Port	The port number for the connection to the host system.
Type	<p>The type of host system. One of the following values is shown:</p> <p>AIX The host is an AIX system.</p> <p>ZOS_NATIVE The host is the z/OS system on which the copy services management server is installed.</p> <p>ZOS_IP The host is a z/OS system that is connected by using an IP address or host name.</p>
Local Status	The status of the connection between the copy services management server and the host system.
Remote Status	<p>In high availability (HA) environments that have an active and standby management server, the status of the connection between the remote server and the host system.</p> <p>If you are running the lshost command on the active server, the remote server is the standby server. If you are running the command on the standby server, the remote server is the active server.</p> <p>If the status of a host connection at the remote copy services management server cannot be determined, Unknown displays. This status might be because the HA configuration is disconnected or the status was not sent from the remote copy services management server.</p>
Connection Message	If connection to the host system failed, an error message is shown.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

`-fmt delim -delim :`

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

IP_Address | ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION | -

If you want to view specific host systems only, specifies the IP or host name for the host system or the value `ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION`.

If you want to list information for an AIX host system or a z/OS host system that is connected by using an IP address or host name, enter the IP address or host name for this parameter.

If the copy services management server is installed on the host system, enter `ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION` for this parameter.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing all host systems

The following command lists default information about all host systems that are added to the copy services management server.

```
csmdi> lshost
```

The following output is returned:

Host System	Port	Type	Local Status
192.0.2.0	9930	AIX	Connected
192.0.2.1	9990	Unknown	Disconnected

Example: Listing detailed information for all host systems

The following command lists detailed information about the host system connections.

```
csmcli> lshost -l
```

The following output is returned:

```
Host System Port Type   Local Status Remote Status Connection Message
=====
192.0.2.2   5858 ZOS_IP Connected   -           -
```

Example: Listing information for the native Z/OS host system

If the copy services management server is installed on the z/OS host system, the following command lists default information about the z/OS host system connection.

```
csmcli> lshost ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION
```

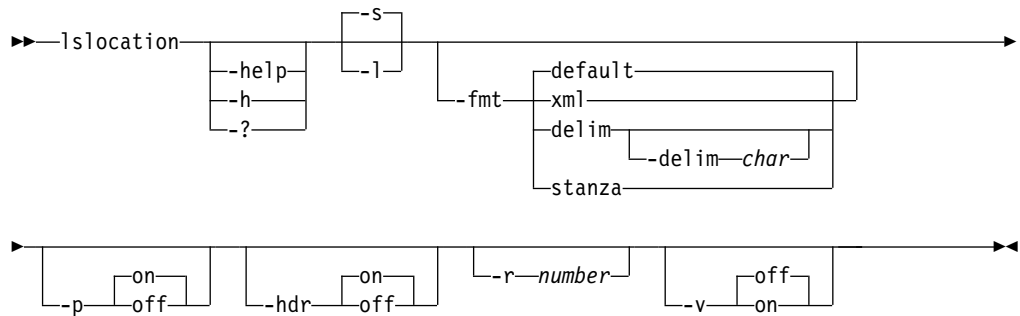
The following output is returned:

```
Host System          Port Type      Local Status
=====
ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION 5858 ZOS_NATIVE Connected
```

Islocation

Use the **Islocation** command to list all defined locations.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-l | -s

Displays detailed information for each location, including:

Column label	Details
Location	An integer representing the location.
Details	The alphanumeric text string that was given to the location. The string can be descriptive of the location.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on

Enables verbose mode.

off

Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

Example: Listing locations

The following command lists all locations.

```
csmdi> lslocation
```

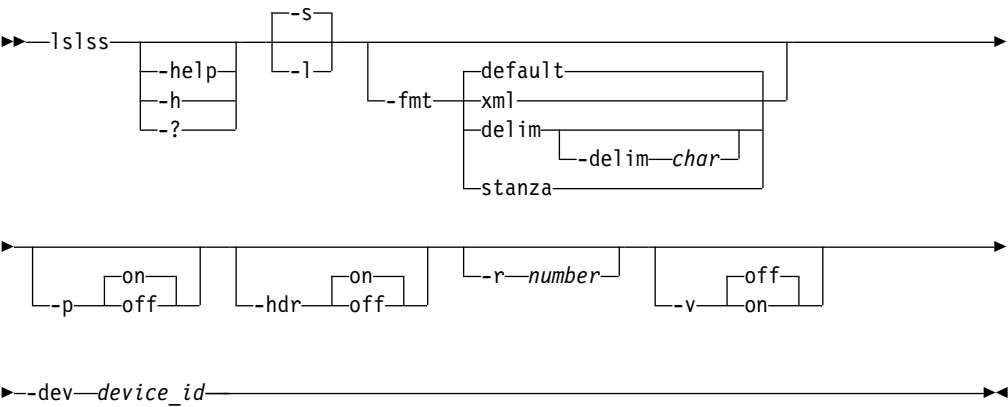
The following output is returned:

Location	Details
1	Boulder
3	Marana
2	Tucson

lsls

Use the **lsls** command to list the logical subsystems (LSSes) for the specified DS or ESS storage system. You can use this output with the **mkpath** command.

Syntax



Parameters

- help | -h | -?**
Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.
- l | -s**
Displays detailed information for each storage system, including:

Column label	Details
Device	Storage system of the LSSs
LSS ID	LSS identifier

- fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }**
Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:
 - default**
Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.
 - xml**
Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.
 - delim**
Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim char** , where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:
-fmt delim -delim :

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-dev device_id

Lists information for the specified DS or ESS storage system.

Example: Listing LSS for a storage system

The following command lists all available LSSs associated with the storage system DS8000:BOX:2107.04131.

```
csmlcli> ls lss -dev DS8000:BOX:2107.04131
```

The following output is returned:

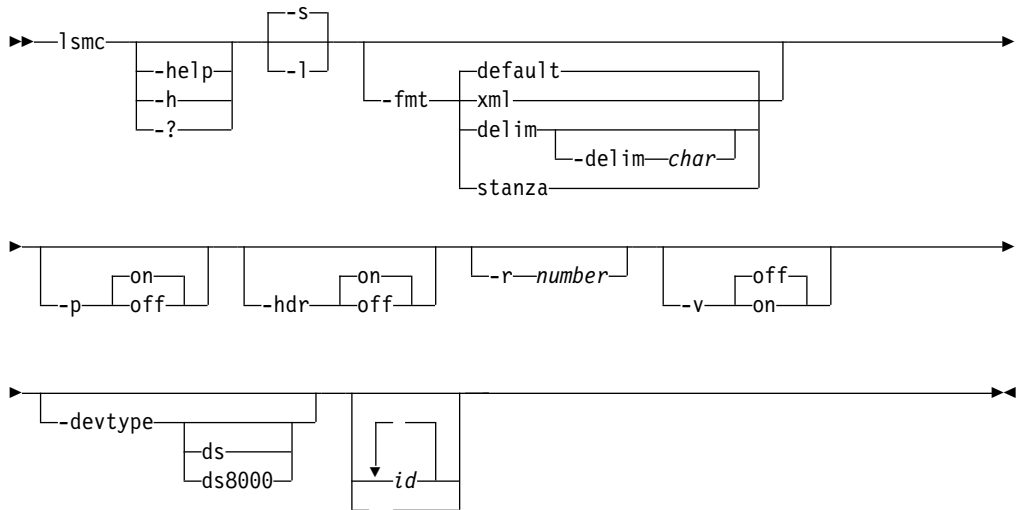
Device	LSS
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:00
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:01
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:02
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:03
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:04
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:05
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:06
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:07
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:08
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:09
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:0A
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:0B
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:0C
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:0D
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:0E
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:0F
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131	DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:10

DS8000:BOX:2107.04131 DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:11
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131 DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:12
DS8000:BOX:2107.04131 DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:14

lsmc

Use the **lsmc** command to display a summary of management consoles and settings.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s

Displays default information for each management console, including the ID and local server connection.

-l Displays detailed information for each management console, including:

Column label	Details
Management console ID	The ID of the management console.
Management console IP	The cluster 0 IP address or domain.
Local Server Connection	The connection status of the management console to the local server.
Location	The associated location of the management console or None.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

`-fmt delim -delim :`

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-devtype *ds* | *ds8000*

Displays information for the specified device type. You can specify one of these values:

ds - any DS device

ds8000 - only DS8000 devices

***id...* | -**

Displays only the threshold settings for one or more specified management console IDs. The management console ID is in the element ID format (for example, HMC:9.11.222.333). Separate multiple IDs with a blank space.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing management consoles

The following command lists the management consoles and settings for all DS storage systems.

```
csmcli> lsmc -devtype ds -l
```

The following output is returned:

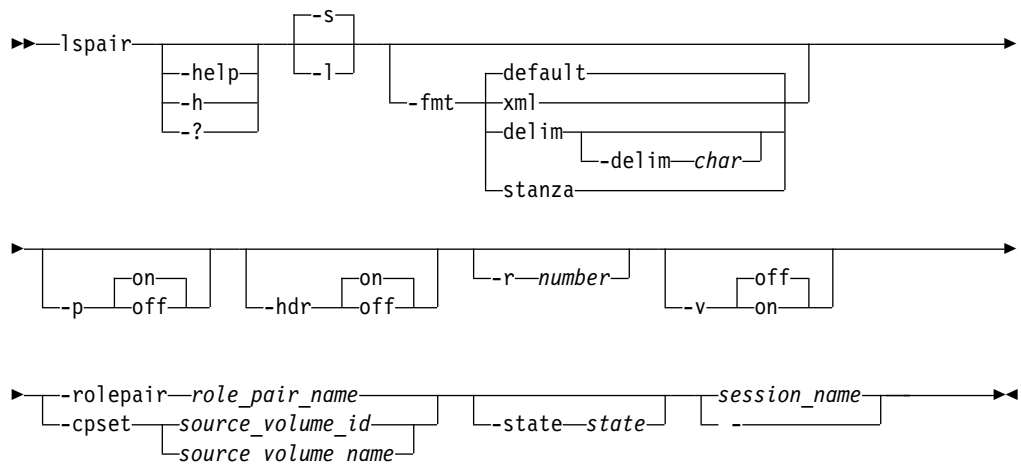
```
MC ID                HMC:2002:90B:E006:222:9:11:223:2
MC IP address        2002:90b:e006:222:9:11:223:2
Local Server Connection Connected
Location             tucson
```

lspair

Use the **lspair** command to list the copy pairs for a specified role pair or to list the copy pairs for a specified copy set.

Important: The **lspair** command is not used for FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Snapshot sessions because copy pairs do not exist in this session type.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Specifies that default information for each copy pair is displayed. The default information is the source and target volumes in the pair and the role pair.

-l Displays the following detailed information for each copy pair.

Column Label	Details
Source Volume	The ID of the source volume in the copy pair. The volume ID is displayed regardless of whether you provide the volume ID or name for the -cpset parameter.
Target Volume	The ID of the target volume in the copy pair.

Column Label	Details
Role Pair	The associated role pair for the copy pair. For sample role pair values, see the -rolepair parameter.
State	The state of the copy pair. The valid values include: Defined Preparing Prepared Target Available Suspended
Recoverable	Specifies Yes or No to indicate whether the copy pair is recoverable.
Copying	Specifies Yes or No to indicate whether the copy pair is copying data.
Progress	The overall copy progress that is associated with the copy pair (if applicable).
New	Specifies Yes or No to indicate whether the copy pair is a new pair.
Copy Set	The host site 1 volume ID of the copy set with which the copy pair is associated.
Timestamp	The date and time that the copy pair was suspended, if applicable.
Last Result	The last message that was issued for the copy pair. If message ends in E or W, the copy pair is an exception pair.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-rolepair *role_pair_name*

Specifies that only copy pairs that are associated with the specified role pair name are displayed. Role pair names are defined by the **lsrolepairs** command.

The following list provides sample role-pair names:

- h1-h2
- h1-h3
- h1-i1
- h1-i2
- h1-i3
- h1-j2
- h1-t1
- h2-i1
- h2-i2
- h2-i3
- h2-j1
- h2-j3
- h3-i3
- i1-j1
- i2-j2
- i3-j3

This parameter is mutually exclusive with the **-cpset** parameter.

-cpset {*source_volume_id* | *source_volume_name*}

Specifies that only copy pairs that are associated with the specified source volume of a copy set are displayed.

For IBM DS8000 and IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage systems, use the volume ID for this parameter.

For other storage systems, you can use the volume ID or name for this parameter.

This parameter is mutually exclusive with the **-rolepair** parameter.

-state *state*

Specifies that only copy pairs in a specified state are displayed. You can specify one of these states:

- Defined

- Preparing
- Prepared
- TargetAvailable
- Suspended

`session_name | -`

Specifies that only copy pairs for the specified session are displayed.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing all copy pairs for a specific role pair

The following command lists the copy pairs that are associated with role pair h1-h2 in the session session1:

```
csmdi> lspair -rolepair h1-h2 session1
```

The following output is returned:

Source Volume	Target Volume	Role Pair
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500	DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1500	H1-H2
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1501	DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1501	H1-H2
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1502	DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1502	H1-H2
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1503	DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1503	H1-H2
DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1504	DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1504	H1-H2
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1500	DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1505	H1-H2
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1501	DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1506	H1-H2
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1502	DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1507	H1-H2
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1503	DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1508	H1-H2
ESS:2105.FCA57:VOL:1504	DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1509	H1-H2

Example: Listing all copy pairs in a specific state

The following command lists the copy pairs that are associated with role pair h2-i3 in the session session1 and are in the Suspended state:

```
csmdi> lspair -rolepair h2-i3 -state Suspended session1
```

The following output is returned:

Source Volume	Target Volume	Role Pair
DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1500	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1505	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1501	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1506	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1502	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1507	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1503	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1508	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1504	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1509	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1505	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1605	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1506	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1606	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1507	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1607	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1508	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1608	H2-I3
DS8000:2107.NF111:VOL:1509	DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1609	H2-I3

Example: Listing detailed information for all copy pairs for a specific copy set

The following command lists detailed information about the copy pairs that are associated with the copy set DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500 in the session session1. The **-fmt stanza** parameter specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

```
csmdi> lspair -l -fmt stanza -cpset DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500 session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Source Volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1500
Target Volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1505
Role Pair     H3-I3
State         Defined
Recoverable   No
Copying       No
Progress      -
New           Yes
Copy Set      DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500
Timestamp     n/a
Last Result   IWNR2024I
```

```
Source Volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1505
Target Volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:150A
Role Pair     I3-J3
State         Defined
Recoverable   No
Copying       No
Progress      -
New           Yes
Copy Set      DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500
Timestamp     n/a
Press Enter To Continue...
```

```
Last Result   IWNR2013I
```

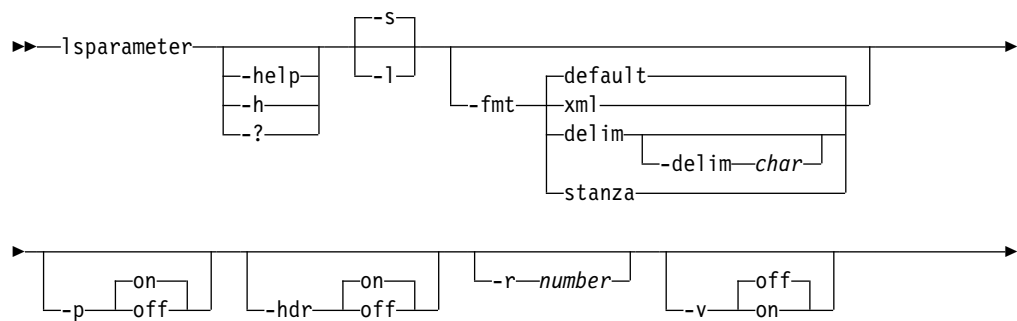
```
Source Volume DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1500
Target Volume DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:150A
Role Pair     H2-J3
State         Defined
Recoverable   No
Copying       No
Progress      -
New           Yes
Copy Set      DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500
Timestamp     n/a
Last Result   IWNR2024I
```

...

Isparameter

Use the **Isparameter** command to list Metro Mirror heartbeat setting.

Syntax



└─parmname consistencyheartbeat─┘

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Displays default information for each system parameter, including the parameter name and value.

-l Displays detailed information for each system parameter, including:

Column label	Details
Parameter Name	Value of the system parameter
Value	The value of the system parameter (for example, Yes or No).
Parm Name	Name of the system parameter

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-parmname consistencyheartbeat

Displays whether the Metro Mirror heartbeat is enabled (on) or disabled (off).

Example: Listing all parameters

The following command lists detailed information about all parameters.

Note: Only the heartbeat setting is currently supported and returned by this command.

```
csmdi> lsparameter -l
```

The following output is returned:

```
Parameter Name          Value Parm Name
=====
The heartbeat function is set on consistencyheartbeat
```

Example: Displaying the Metro Mirror heartbeat setting

The following command displays the current setting for the Metro Mirror heartbeat.

```
csmdi> lsparameter -parmname consistencyheartbeat
```

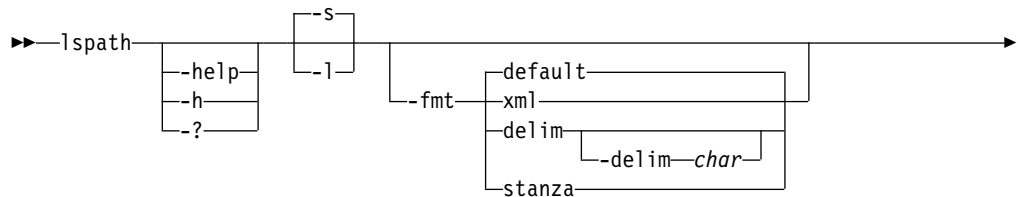
The following output is returned:

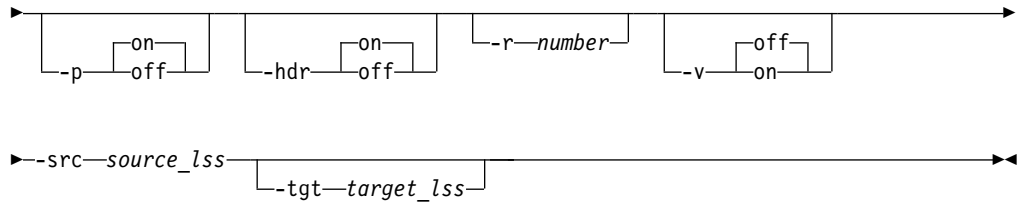
```
Parameter Name          Value
=====
The heartbeat function is set on
```

lspath

Use the **lspath** command to display paths between ESS and DS devices. You can then use this information for a remote copy.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Displays default information for each path, including the source and target LSS, path type, status, and whether the path was auto-generated.

-l Displays detailed information for each path, including:

Column label	Details
Source	Origin of the path. For ESS, this is an LSS. For the format of this field, see the mkpath command.
Target	Target of the path. For ESS this is an LSS. For the format of this field, see the mkpath command.
Type	ESCON (ESS or DS only) or Fibre Channel.
Status	Whether the path is currently established or not.
Auto-Generated	Yes, if the path was generated by the copy services management server. No, if you specified the path.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

- on** Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.
- off** Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.
- hdr { on | off }**
Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:
 - on** Displays the table header. This is the default value.
 - off** Hides the table header.
- r number**
Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.
- v { on | off }**
Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:
 - on** Enables verbose mode.
 - off** Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.
- src source_lss**
Specifies the source LSS. This must be specified in the format *type.serial.lss(hex).port(hex)* (for example, ESS:2105.FCA18:LSS:10.00FF).
- tgt target_lss**
Specifies the target LSS. This must be specified in the format *type.serial.lss(hex).port(hex)* (for example, ESS:2105.FCA18:LSS:10.00FF).

Example: Listing all paths with the same source LSS

The following command lists all paths that use source LSS DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.

```
csmdi> lspath -src DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15
```

The following output is returned:

Source	Target	Type
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0330	DS8000:2107.NF111:LSS:15.0x0030	Fibre Channel
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0110	ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15.0x000C	Fibre Channel
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0110	DS8000:2107.NK791:LSS:15.0x0032	Fibre Channel

Status	Auto-Generated
Established	Yes
Established	Yes
Established	Yes

Example: Listing information about a specific path

The following command lists information about the path with source LSS DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.

```
csmdi> lspath -src DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15 -tgt ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15
```

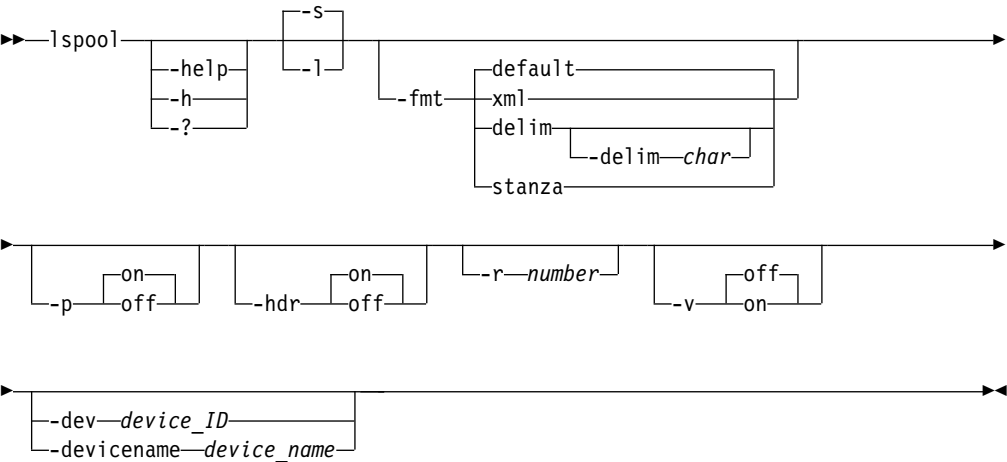
The following output is returned:

Source	Target	Type
=====		
DS8000:2107.04131:LSS:15.0x0110	ESS:2105.FCA57:LSS:15.0x000C	Fibre Channel
Status	Auto-Generated	
=====		
Established	Yes	

lspool

Use the **lspool** command to list pools that are on FlashSystems/IBM Spectrum Accelerate.

Syntax



Parameters

- help | -h | -?**
Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.
- s | -l**
Displays the following information:

Column Label	Details
Device Name	The name of the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate that contains the pools.
Device ID	The ID of the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate that contains the pools.
Pool Name	The name of the pool.
Pool ID	The ID for the pool.

- fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }**
Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:
- default**
Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.
- xml** Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

`-fmt delim -delim :`

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-dev *device_ID* and -devicename *device_name*

Both of these parameters specify that only pools on a specific storage system are displayed. The **-dev** parameter specifies that the storage system is determined by the ID for the system. The **-devicename** parameter specifies that the storage system is determined by the name of the storage system.

The **-dev** and **-devicename** parameters are mutually exclusive.

If the **-dev** or **-devicename** parameter is not provided, the output shows the pools for all FlashSystems/IBM Spectrum Accelerate.

Example: Listing pools on all FlashSystems/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

The following command lists the pools that are on all FlashSystems/IBM Spectrum Accelerate.

```
csmdi> lspool -l
```

The following output is returned:

Device Name	Device ID	Pool Name	Pool ID
=====	=====	=====	=====
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool1	XIV:POOL:1300202:100929
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool2	XIV:POOL:1300202:100930
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool3	XIV:POOL:1300202:100931
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool4	XIV:POOL:1300202:112412
XIV_B	XIV:BOX:1566078	healthcare	XIV:POOL:1566078:436473
XIV_B	XIV:BOX:1566078	mynappool1	XIV:POOL:1566078:436474
XIV_B	XIV:BOX:1566078	yogapool	XIV:POOL:1566078:436475

Example: Listing pools on a specific FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate by storage system ID

The following command lists the pools that are on the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate with the ID XIV:BOX:1300202.

```
csmdi> lspool -dev XIV:BOX:1300202 -l
```

The following output is returned:

Device Name	Device ID	Pool Name	Pool ID
=====	=====	=====	=====
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool1	XIV:POOL:1300202:100929
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool2	XIV:POOL:1300202:100930
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool3	XIV:POOL:1300202:100931
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool4	XIV:POOL:1300202:112412

Example: Listing pools on a specific FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate by storage system name

The following command lists the pools that are on the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate that is named XIV:BOX:1300202 Troy.

```
csmdi> lspool -devicename 'XIV:BOX:1300202 Troy'
```

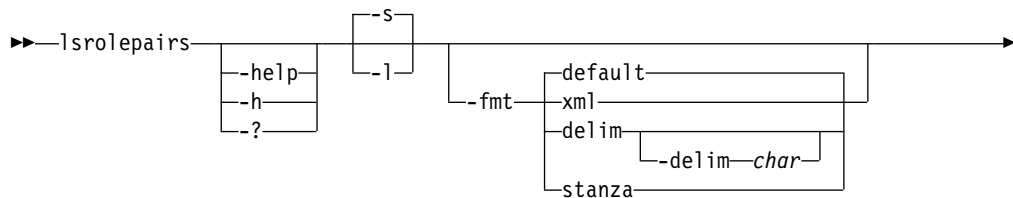
The following output is returned:

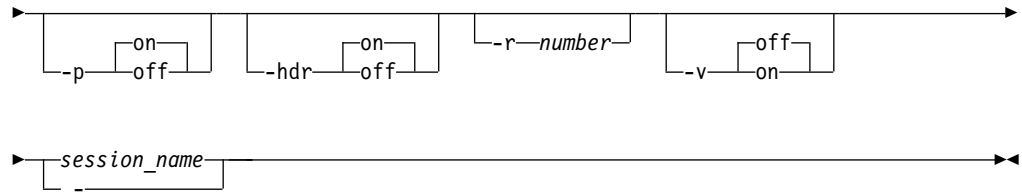
Device Name	Device ID	Pool Name	Pool ID
=====	=====	=====	=====
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool1	XIV:POOL:1300202:100929
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool2	XIV:POOL:1300202:100930
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool3	XIV:POOL:1300202:100931
XIV 1300202 Troy	XIV:BOX:1300202	mynappool4	XIV:POOL:1300202:112412

Isrolepairs

Use the **isrolepairs** command to display role pairs in a session.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Displays default information for each role pair, including the role name, session (copy) type, and whether the role pair is recoverable, has errors, or is in the process of copying data.

-l Displays detailed information for each role pair, including:

Column label	Details
Name	System-generated text string used to identify a role pair. The value listed here is what is to be entered on the lspair command.
Recoverable	An indicator of whether the role pair is recoverable. Value values are Yes or No.
Error	An indicator of whether the role pair has errors. Value values are Yes or No.
Copying	An indicator of the role pair is in the process of copying data. Value values are Yes or No.
Progress	The overall copy progress associated with the role pair.
Copy Type	The current session (copy) type of the role pair.
Error Volumes	Total number of volumes in an exception state.
Recoverable Pairs	Number of recoverable pairs
Copying Pairs	Number of copying pairs
Total Pairs	Total number of pairs
Recovery Time	An indicator of the time to which the session is recoverable. Includes both date and time. For point-in-time copy, this is the time that the copy was taken. For continuous synchronous remote copy, this is the time at which the Freeze and Run commands were issued. This field is blank if Recoverable is set to No.
CG Name	This is the user defined consistency group name for the role pair. If the user did not explicitly set a consistency group name for the role pair, or one is not allowed to be set for this role pair, a dash (-) will be displayed.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on

Enables verbose mode.

off

Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

***session_name* | -**

Specifies the session name for which you display the role pairs.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Description

To see the volumes that are in a copy set, use the **showcpset** command.

To see the status of volumes that are in a copy set, use the **lsvol** command.

Example: Listing role pairs in a session

The following command lists information about the role pairs in the session `session1`.

```
csmdi> lsrolepairs session1
```

The following output is returned:

Name	Recoverable	Error	Copying	Copy Type
H1-H2	No	Yes	Yes	MM
H2-J3	No	No	No	GM
H1-I3	No	No	No	GC
I3-J3	No	No	No	FC
H1-J3	No	No	No	GM
H3-I3	No	No	No	FC
H2-I3	No	No	Yes	GC
H1-H3	No	No	No	GC

Example: Listing detailed information for the role pairs in a session

The following command lists detailed information about the role pairs in the session `session1`.

```
csmdi> lsrolepairs -fmt stanza -l session1
```

The following output is returned:

Name	H1-H2
Recoverable	No
Error	Yes
Copying	Yes
Copy Type	MM
Progress	66
Error Volumes	5
Recoverable Pairs	5
Copying Pairs	5
Total Pairs	10
Recovery Time	n/a
CG Name	-

Name	H2-J3
Recoverable	No
Error	No
Copying	No
Copy Type	GM
Progress	-
Error Volumes	0
Recoverable Pairs	0
Copying Pairs	0
Total Pairs	10
Recovery Time	n/a
CG Name	-

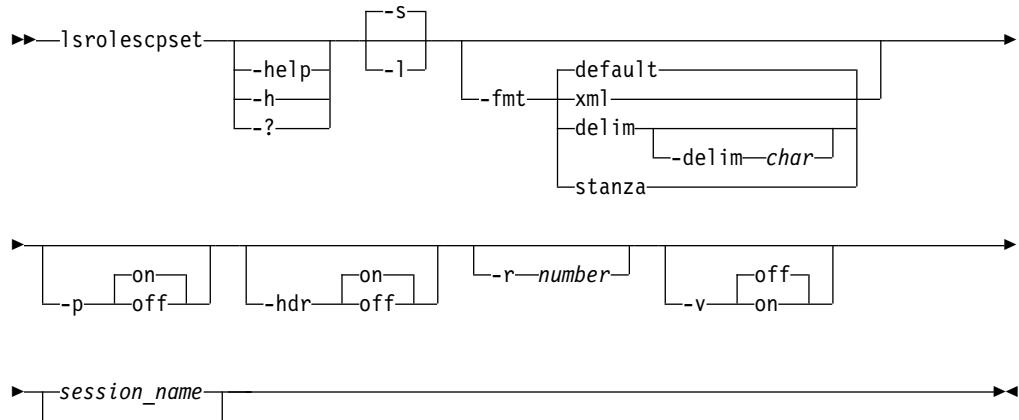
Name	H1-I3
Recoverable	No
Error	No
Copying	No
Copy Type	GC
Progress	-
Error Volumes	0
Recoverable Pairs	0

Copying Pairs	0
Total Pairs	10
Recovery Time	n/a
CG Name	0F

lsrolescset

Use the **lsrolescset** command to list the volume roles in the specified session.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-l | -s

Displays detailed information for each session, including:

Column Label	Details
Name	Short name for the role.
Description	Description of the role.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim char**, where **char** represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

session_name | -

Specifies the session name for which you are going to list the roles of the copy set.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing copy set roles

The following command lists the volume roles in session session1.

```
csmdi> lsrolescpset session1
```

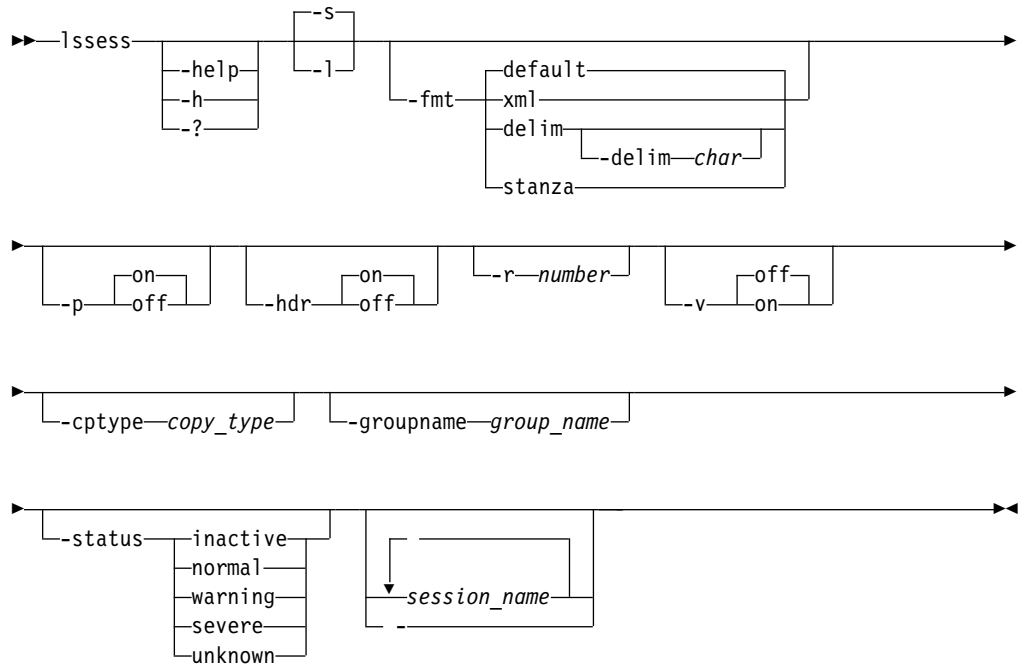
The following output is returned:

```
Name Description
=====
H1   Host on Site1
H2   Host on Site2
H3   Host on Site3
I3   Intermediate on Site3
J3   Journal on Site3
```

Issess

Use the **Issess** command to display sessions and their status.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Displays default information for each session, including the session name, status, state, and session type.

-l

Displays the following detailed information for each session.

Column Label	Details
Name	The user-defined name of the session.
Status	The status level. The values are: Inactive, Normal, Warning, Severe, or Unknown.
State	The session state. The values are: Defined, Preparing, Prepared, Suspended, Suspended (Partial), or Target Available.
Copy Type	The session type. For a list of values, see the -cptype parameter.
Recoverable	Specifies whether a session is recoverable. The values are yes or no.
Copying	Specifies whether a copying operation is taking place. The values are yes or no.
Copy Sets	The number of copy sets that are in the session.
Error	Specifies whether a session has errors. The values are yes or no.

Column Label	Details
Group	Specifies that only sessions belonging to the session <i>group_name</i> are displayed.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on

Enables verbose mode.

off

Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-cptype *copy_type*

Specifies the session type. The storage systems that are available for a session differ by session type. The following parameter values are listed by storage system type.

IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800, IBM DS8000

- fc: FlashCopy
- hs: Basic HyperSwap®
- mmsd: Metro Mirror Single Direction
- mmfofb: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback
- pmm: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback with Practice
- mm_mm: Metro Mirror - Metro Mirror (This session type is available only for IBM DS8000 storage systems with a microcode level that supports single source to multi-target relationships.)
- gmsd: Global Mirror Single Direction
- gmfofb: Global Mirror Failover/Failback
- pgm: Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Practice
- pgm2s: Global Mirror Either Direction with Two Site Practice
- mgm: Metro Global Mirror
- pmgm: Metro Global Mirror with Practice

IBM Storwize V3500

- fc: FlashCopy

IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller, IBM Storwize V7000, IBM Storwize V7000 Unified, IBM Storwize V5000, IBM Storwize V3700, IBM FlashSystem V840, IBM FlashSystem V9000, and IBM FlashSystem 9100.

- fc: FlashCopy
- mmsd: Metro Mirror Single Direction
- mmfofb: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback
- pmmsvc: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback with Practice
- gmsdsvc: Global Mirror Single Direction
- gmfofbsvc: Global Mirror Failover/Failback
- pgmsvc: Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Practice
- gmcvsvc: Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes

FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

- snap: Snapshot
- mmfofbxiv: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback
- gmfofbxiv: Global Mirror Failover/Failback

-groupname *group_name*

Specifies that only sessions belonging to the session *group_name* are displayed.

-status *inactive | normal | warning | severe | unknown*

Specifies that only sessions with the specified status of Inactive, Normal, Warning, Severe, or Unknown are displayed.

session_name... | -

Specifies that only sessions with a specified session name are displayed.

Separate multiple session names with a space between each name. All sessions are displayed by default.

Alternatively, use a dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing all sessions

The following command lists information about all sessions.

```
csmlcli> lssess
```

The following output is returned:

Name	Status	State	Copy Type	Group
session1	Normal	Target Available	Metro Global Mirror w/ Practice	-

Example: Listing sessions that have errors

The following command lists detailed information about sessions that have a status of Severe.

```
csmdi> lssess -status severe
```

The following output is returned:

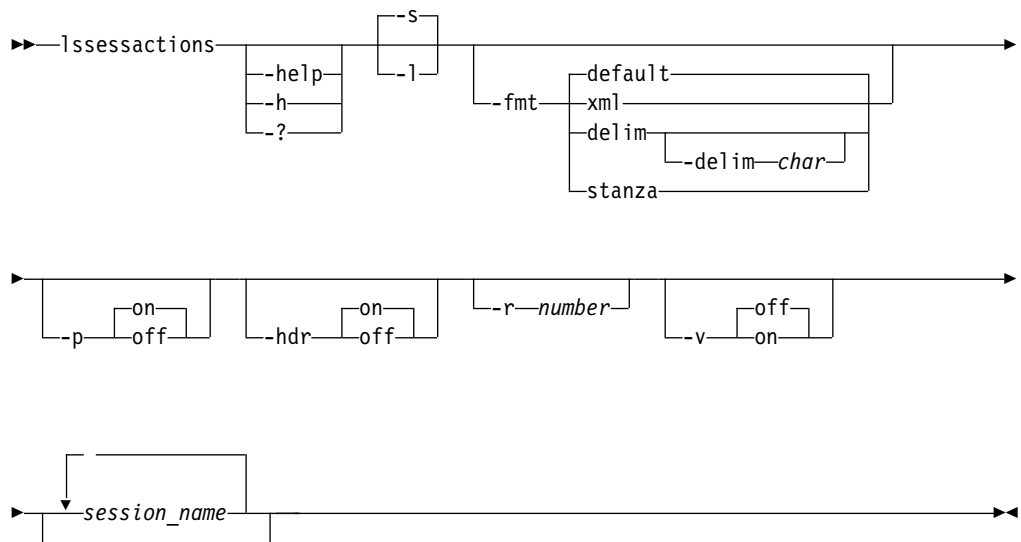
Name	Status	State	Copy Type
session1	Severe	Preparing	Metro Global Mirror w/ Practice

lssessactions

Use the **lssessactions** command to list all the session actions (commands) that can be run for a session.

Tip: To run an action for a session, use the **cmdsess** command.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s | -l

Specifies that the following information is displayed for each session:

Column Label	Details
Action	Name of the session action (command) that can be run on the session.

Column Label	Details
Description	The description of the command.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

***session_name...* | -**

Specifies that only valid actions for the specified session name or names are displayed. Separate multiple session names with a space between each name. If you provide more than one session name, all commands that are valid for the combined sessions are listed.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing available actions for a session

The following command lists all actions that can be run for the session named session1:

```
csmcli> lssessactions session1
```

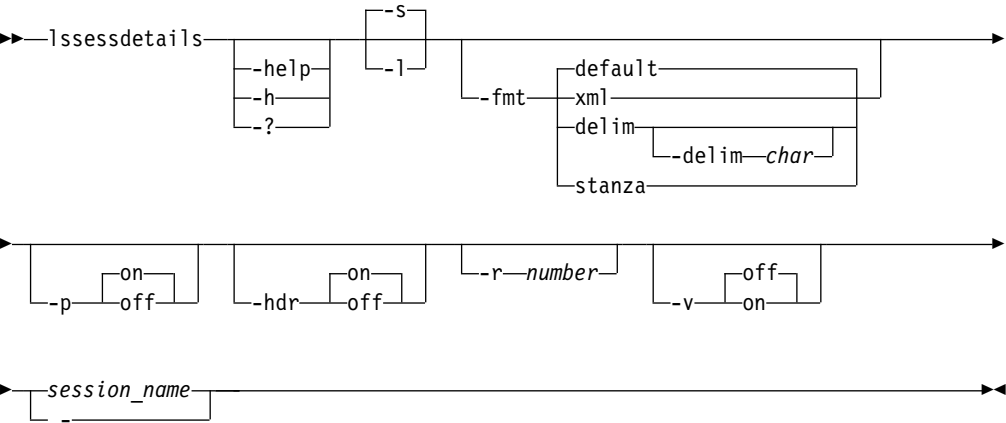
The following output is returned:

Action	Description
=====	
start_h1:h3	Start host1 to host3 copying
suspend	Suspend session
start_h1:h2:h3	Start host1 to host2 to host3 copying
terminate	Terminate session

lssessdetails

Use the **lssessdetails** command to display the details of a session.

Syntax



Parameters

- help | -h | -?**
Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.
- s**
Displays default information for each session, including option names and values.
- l**
Displays detailed information for each session, including:

Column label	Details
Option Name	Name of the option that is set for this session.
Value	Value of the detail that is set for this session.
Description	Description of the session option.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

-fmt delim -delim :

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on

Enables verbose mode.

off

Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

***session_name* | -**

Lists the details that are relevant to the specified session.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing detailed information about a Metro Global Mirror with Practice session

The following command lists detailed information about a Metro Global Mirror with Practice session named session1.

```
csmdi> lssessdetails -l session1
```

The following output is returned:

Option Name	Value	Description
afteruspend	Release	Policy for I/O after suspend
maxdrain_h1j3	30	Maximum consistency group drain time for the H1-J3 role pair
dsRPOwarning_h1j3	1	Warning level threshold in seconds for the H1-J3 role pair
maxdrain_h2j3	30	Maximum consistency group drain time for the H2-J3 role pair
dsRPOwarning_h2j3	1	Warning level threshold in seconds for the H2-J3 role pair
rpo_h2j3	0	Recovery point objective in seconds for the H2-J3 role pair
rpo_h1j3	0	Recovery point objective in seconds for the H1-J3 role pair
dsnocpy	No	No copying of the volume
enableHardenedFreeze	No	Policy for whether to use z/OS hardened freeze
dsRPOsevere_h1j3	2	Severe level threshold in seconds for the H1-J3 role pair
dsRPOsevere_h2j3	2	Severe level threshold in seconds for the H2-J3 role pair
rmreserves	No	Remove secondary reserves
coordint_h1j3	50	Extended distance copy coordination interval for the H1-J3 role pair
coordint_h2j3	50	Extended distance copy coordination interval for the H2-J3 role pair
failIfTgtOnline	No	Fail MM/GC if the target is online (CKD only)

Example: Listing detailed information about a Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes session

The following command lists detailed information about a Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes session named session2.

```
csmdi> lssessdetails -l session2
```

The following output is returned:

Option Name	Value	Description
autoRestartDelay	0	Delay time before automatic restart
svcRPOsevere_h1h2	900	Severe level threshold in seconds for the H1-H2 role pair
svcRPOwarning_h2h2	600	Warning level threshold in seconds for the H1-H2 role pair
enableAutoRestart	Yes	Enable automatic restarts for unexpected suspends
enableChangeVolumes	Yes	Enable SVC change volumes
cycleperiod	200	SVC change volume cycle period

Example: Listing detailed information about a Basic HyperSwap session

The following command lists detailed information about a Basic HyperSwap session named session3.

```
csmdi> lssessdetails -l session3
```

The following output is returned:

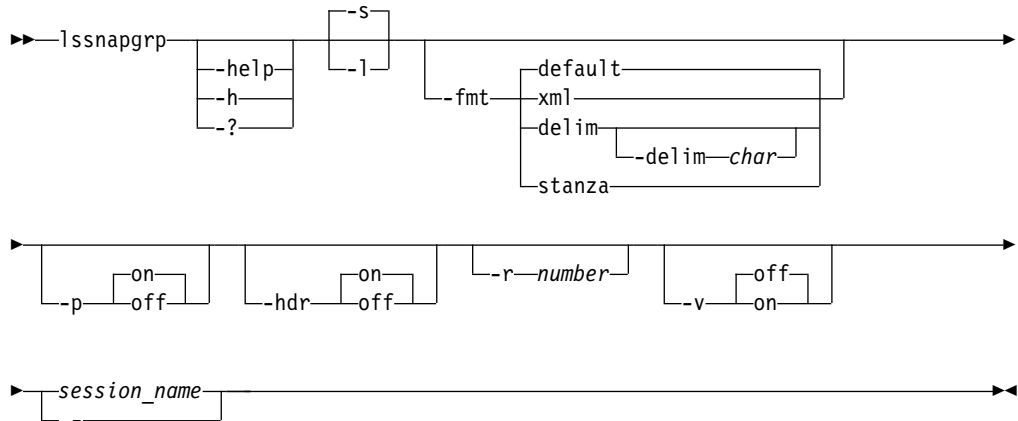
Option Name	Value	Description
disableHS	No	Prevent an automatic z/OS HyperSwap from occurring
onPlannedErrorHS	disable	Policy for an error during a planned HyperSwap for sysplex members
onUnplannedErrorHS	partition	Policy for an error during an unplanned HyperSwap for sysplex members
failIfTgtOnline	Yes	Fail MM/GC if the target is online (CKD only)
zosAssociation	PLEX1 (sysplex)	The z/OS system or sysplex that is associated with this session

lssnapgrp

Use the **lssnapgrp** command to view snapshot groups that are in an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate snapshot session.

A snapshot group is a grouping of snapshots of individual volumes in a consistency group at a specific point in time.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s

Specifies that default information for each snapshot group is displayed. The default information is the name of the snapshot group and the date and time that the group was created.

-l

Specifies that detailed information for each snapshot group is displayed, including:

Column Label	Details
Name	The name of the snapshot group.
Timestamp	The date and time that the snapshot group was created.

Column Label	Details
Deletion Priority	<p>The priority in which the snapshot group is deleted from the session. The value is the number 1 - 4. A value of 1 specifies that the snapshot group is deleted last. A value of 4 specifies that the snapshot group is deleted first.</p> <p>Multiple snapshot groups might exist until FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate identifies that there is not enough space in the storage pool to keep all of the snapshots.</p>
Restore Master	Specifies whether the snapshot group listed can be used to restore the master volumes of the session. Values for this are Yes and No.
Locked	Specifies whether the snapshot group is currently locked. If the snapshot group is locked, write operations to the snapshots within the snapshot group are prevented.
Modified	Specifies whether the snapshot group has been modified. A snapshot group is marked as modified when it is unlocked for the first time.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

session_name | -

Specifies the name of the Snapshot session.

Alternatively, use a dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing all snapshot groups that are in a session

The following command lists all snapshot groups that are in the session snap6:

```
csmdi> lssnapgrp snap6
```

The following output is returned:

Name	Timestamp
=====	
snap6.snap_group_00001	2011-04-01 00:04:49.000-0500

Example: Listing detailed information about the snapshot groups that are in a session

The following command lists detailed information about the snapshot groups that are in the session snap6:

```
csmdi> lssnapgrp -l snap6
```

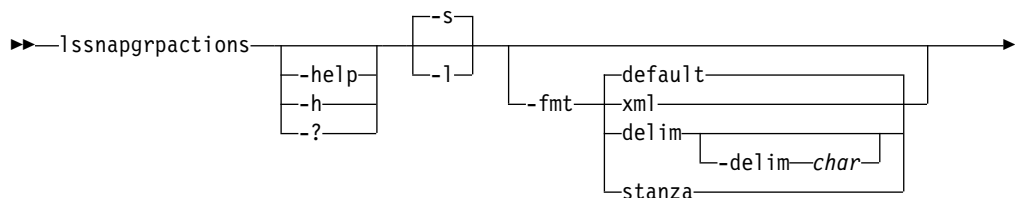
The following output is returned:

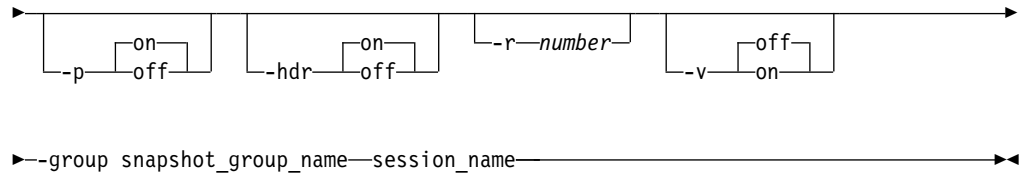
Name	Timestamp	Deletion Priority	Restore Master	Locked	Modified
=====					
snap6.snap_group_00001	2011-07-18 15:22:14.000-0700	1	No	Yes	No
snap6.snap_group_00002	2011-07-18 15:22:41.000-0700	1	Yes	Yes	No

lssnapgrpactions

Use the **lssnapgrpactions** command to specify the session and snapshot group name that you want to view available actions for.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s | -l

-s Specifies the default output which is action name and description.

-l Specifies the detailed output. In this case, specifies the same output as the **-s** parameter.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off

Hides the table header.

- r *number***
Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.
- v { on | off }**
Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:
- on** Enables verbose mode.
 - off** Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.
- group *snapshot_group_name***
Specifies the name of the snapshot group to list snapshot group actions for.
- session_name | -**
Specifies the session for which the properties are to be displayed.
- Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Specifying the session and snapshot group name

The following command specifies the session and snapshot group name that you want to view available actions for.

```
csmcli> lssnapgrpactions -group MySnapSession.snap_group_0001 MySnapSession
```

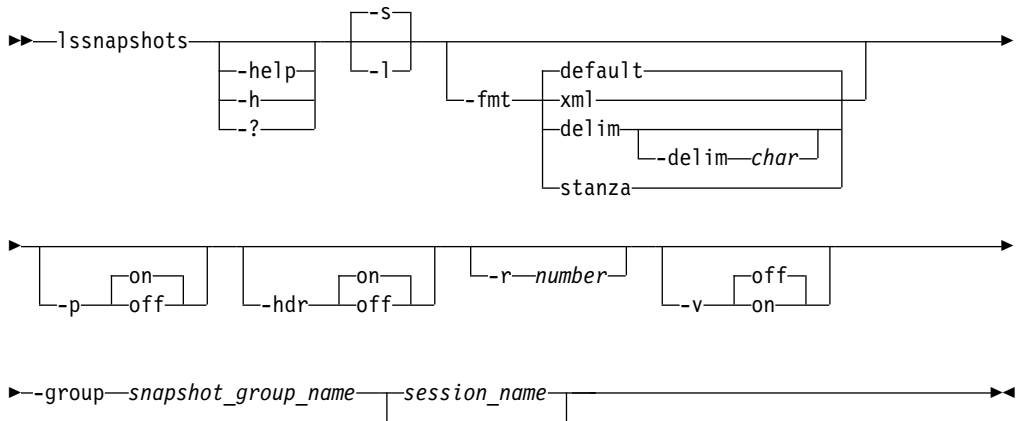
The following output is returned:

Action	Description
delete	Deletes a snapshot group
disband	Disbands a snapshot group
duplicate	Duplicates a snapshot group
lock	Locks a snapshot group
restore	Restores a snapshot group from another snapshot group
set_priority	Sets the deletion priority for a snapshot group

lssnapshots

Use the **lssnapshots** command to view snapshots that are in a snapshot group in a FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate snapshot session.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s

Specifies that default information for each snapshot in the snapshot group is displayed. The default information is the name of the snapshot.

-l

Specifies that detailed information for each snapshot in the snapshot group is displayed, including:

Column Label	Details
Name	The name of the snapshot.
H1 Volume ID	The ID of the H1 volume that is associated with the snapshot.
Size	The size of the H1 volume at the time that the snapshot was created.
Size Unit	The unit of measure for the size of the H1 volume at the time that the snapshot was created.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r *number*
Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }
Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-group *snapshot_group_name*
Specifies the name of the snapshot group that contains the snapshots.

session_name | -
Specifies the name of the Snapshot session that contains the snapshot group.

Alternatively, use a dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing all snapshots that are in a snapshot group in a session

The following command lists all snapshots that are in the snapshot group snap6.snap_group_00001 for session snap6:

```
csmcli> lssnapshots -group snap6.snap_group_00001 snap6
```

The following output is returned:

```
Name
=====
snap6.snap_group_00001_vol1
snap6.snap_group_00001_vol2
```

Example: Listing detailed information about the snapshots that are in a snapshot group for a session

The following command lists detailed information about the snapshots that are in snapshot group for the session snap6:

```
csmcli> lssnapshots -group snap6.snap_group_00001 -l snap6
```

The following output is returned:

Name	H1 Volume ID	Size	Size Unit
snap6.snap_group_00001_vol1	XIV:VOL:7803307:115017	16.0	GiB
snap6.snap_group_00001_vol2	XIV:VOL:7803307:115018	16.0	GiB

lssnmp

Use the **lssnmp** command to list the SNMP managers to which the copy services management server is configured to send SNMP alerts.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

Description

The information displayed is either the domain name or the IP address of the server, depending on how you specified it.

SNMP traps are not specific to any particular session. All traps for any session are sent to each server.

For each SNMP manager, the following information is displayed:

Column label	Details
SNMP Manager	Domain name or IP address of the management server to which SNMP traps are sent
Port	The specific UDP port to which SNMP traps are sent

Example: Listing SNMP managers

The following command lists the SNMP managers.

```
csmdi> lssnmp
```

The following output is returned:

```
SNMP Manager Port
=====
9.11.10.1      162
127.0.0.1      163
```

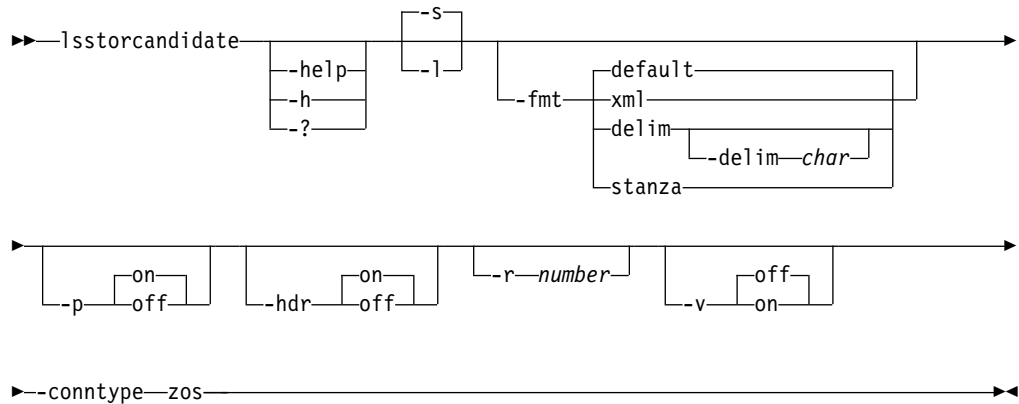
lsstorcandidate

Use the **lsstorcandidate** command to list the storage systems that can be discovered through an IBM z/OS connection. This command does not list storage systems that are already added to the copy services management server configuration.

To list storage systems that are already in the configuration, use the **lsdevice** command.

You can run the **lsstorcandidate** command only from a copy services management server that is installed on a system that is running the z/OS operating system.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s | -l

Specifies that the following information is displayed for each storage system:

Column Label	Details
Device ID	The storage system ID.
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the storage system.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim char**, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

- on** Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.
- off** Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

- on** Displays the table header. This is the default value.
- off** Hides the table header.

-r *number*

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the **-p** parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

- on** Enables verbose mode.
- off** Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-conntype *zos*

Specifies the type of connection that the storage systems use. Currently, you can specify only *zos* for a z/OS connection.

Example: Listing candidate storage systems

The following command lists candidate storage systems:

```
csmdi> lsstorcandidate -conntype zos
```

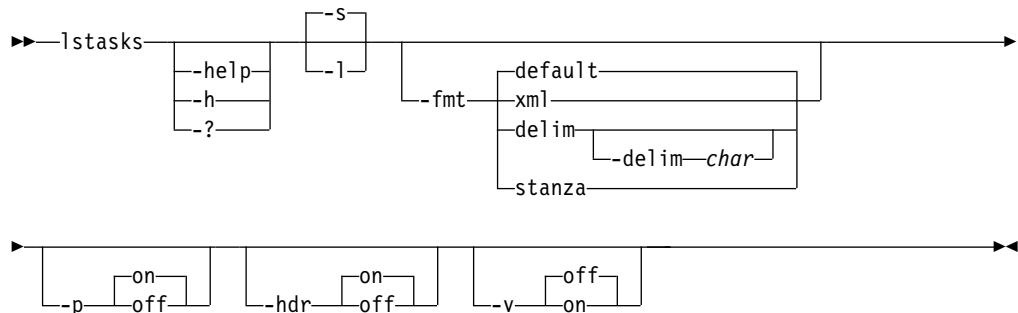
The following output is returned:

```
Device ID          Manufacturer
=====
ESS:BOX:2105.12345  IBM
```

lstasks

Use the **lstasks** command to display a list of scheduled tasks.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s

Displays default information, including: ID, Name, and Status.

-l Displays detailed information, including:

Column label	Details
ID	Identification for the scheduled task
Name	User defined name for the scheduled
Status	Status for the scheduled task
Schedule	How often the task is scheduled to run
Next Run Time	Time the task is scheduled to run next
Last Run Time	Last time the task ran
Last Message	Last message for the task

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml

Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim

Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify **-fmt delim -delim *char***, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following **-fmt** parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza

Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on

Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off

Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on

Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

Example: Listing tasks for a given session

```
csmcli> ltasks
```

The following output is returned:

ID	Name	Status
1	Backup SGC	disabled
2	Flash GM sessions	running
3	Suspend MM sessions	enabled
4	Suspend GM sessions	enabled

```
csmcli> ltasks -l
```

The following output is returned:

ID	Name	Status	Schedule	Next Run Time
1	Backup SGC	disabled	No Schedule	-
2	Flash GM sessions	running	Every 2 hours	2018-07-23 12:20:00.008-0500
3	Suspend MM sessions	enabled	09:40AM [CST] [SUN,TUE]	2018-07-23 10:00:00.008-0500
4	Suspend GM sessions	enabled	No Schedule	-

Last Run Time	Last Result
-	IWNR2205I
2018-07-23 10:20:00.008-0500	IWNR2205I
-	IWNR2205I
-	IWNR2205I

lsvol

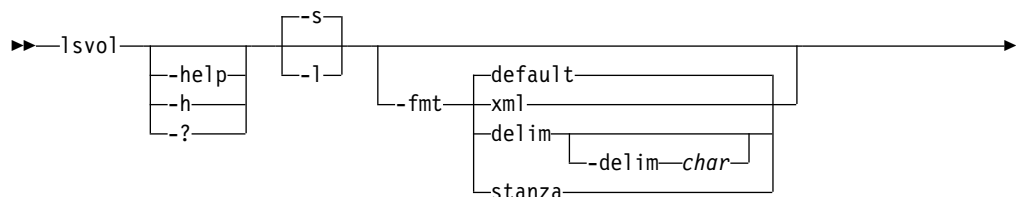
Use the **lsvol** command to display detailed information about volumes.

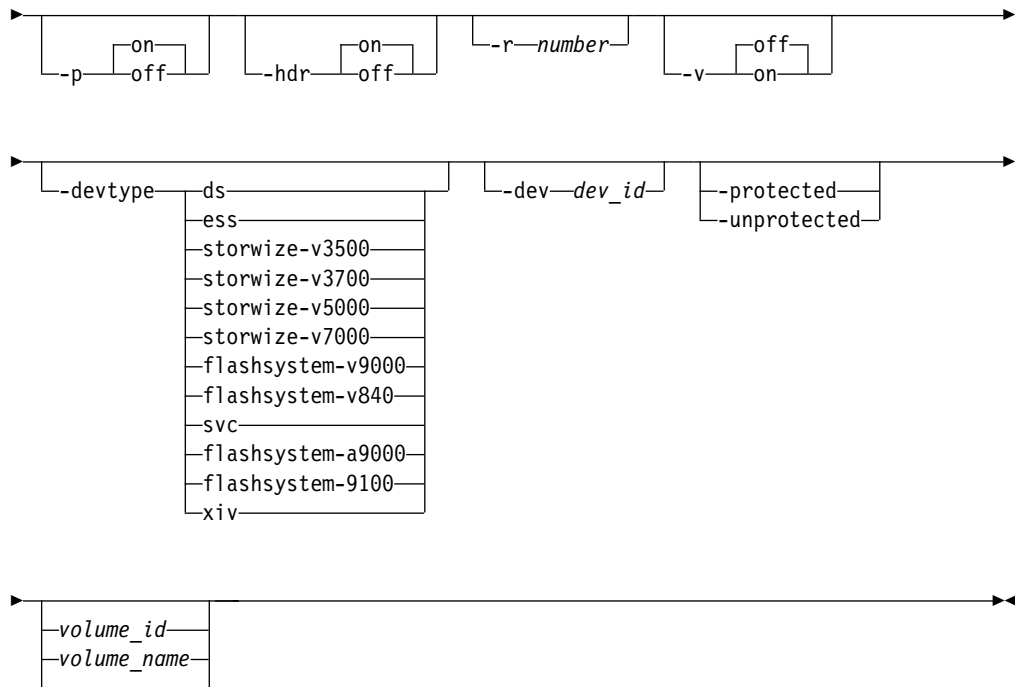
You can use the **lsvol** command to:

- Choose available volumes for copy sets.
- View properties of volumes such as capacity, type, and whether a volume is space efficient or protected.

Important: If you issue the **lsvol** command without parameters, a list of all the volumes for all storage systems is displayed. The processing of the command can take minutes or hours depending on the size of your environment. Press Enter to continue listing the output or press Ctrl+C to discontinue.

Syntax





Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Displays default information for each volume, including the name, ID, device, manufacturer, volume type, and whether the volume is protected and space efficient.

-l Displays the following detailed information for each volume.

Column Label	Details
Name	The volume name.
ID	The volume ID. The volume ID is displayed regardless of whether you provide the volume ID or name for the volume parameter.
Device	The ID of the storage system
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the storage system. Currently, only IBM storage systems are supported.
Type	The values CKD for count key data or FB for fixed block. The value that is displayed depends on the storage system type.
Protected	Yes if the volume is protected. No if the volume is not protected.
Space Efficient	Yes if the volume is a space-efficient volume.No if the volume is not a space-efficient volume.
Format	Volume format

Column Label	Details
LSS/IO Group/Pool	The logical subsystem (LSS), IO group, or pool. The value that is displayed depends on the storage system type.
Size	The volume size.
Size Unit	The unit of measure that the capacity is given in, either gigabytes or cylinders.
Is Z Attached	Identifies whether the volumes are connected through an IBM z/OS connection.
Locked	Indicates whether the volume is locked. Applies only to FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate.

-fmt { default | xml | delim | stanza }

Specifies the format of the output. You can specify one of these values:

default

Specifies that the output is displayed in tabular format using spaces as delimiters between columns. This is the default value.

xml Specifies that the output is displayed in XML format.

delim Specifies that output is displayed in a tabular format using commas as delimiters between columns.

To use a character other than a comma as the delimiter, specify `-fmt delim -delim char`, where *char* represents the character that you want to use as the delimiter. For example, if you want to use a colon (:) as the delimiter, use the following `-fmt` parameter:

```
-fmt delim -delim :
```

If you use a shell metacharacter as the delimiting character, enclose the character in quotation marks or single quotation marks. A blank space is not a valid character.

stanza Specifies that the output is displayed as one keyword-value pair per line.

-p { on | off }

Specifies whether to display one page of text at a time or all text at once.

on Displays one page of text at a time. Pressing any key displays the next page. This is the default value when the command is run in interactive mode.

off Displays all text at once. This is the default value when the command is run in single-shot mode.

-hdr { on | off }

Specifies whether to display the table header. You can specify one of these values:

on Displays the table header. This is the default value.

off Hides the table header.

-r number

Specifies the number of rows per page to display when the `-p` parameter is specified. You can specify a value of 1 - 100. The default value is 22.

-v { on | off }

Specifies whether to enable verbose mode. You can specify one of these values:

on Enables verbose mode.

off Disables verbose mode. This is the default value.

-devtype { ds | ess | storwize-v3500 | storwize-v3700 | storwize-v5000 | storwize-v7000 | flashsystem-v9000 | flashsystem-v840 | svc | flashsystem-a9000 | flashsystem-9100 | xiv }

Specifies volumes by storage system type. The parameter values are:

- **ds**: IBM DS8000
- **ess**: IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800
- **storwize-v3500**: IBM Storwize V3500
- **storwize-v3700**: IBM Storwize V3700
- **storwize-v5000**: IBM Storwize V5000
- **storwize-v7000**: IBM Storwize V7000 and IBM Storwize V7000 Unified
- **flashsystem-v9000**: IBM FlashSystem V9000
- **flashsystem-v840**: IBM FlashSystem V840
- **svc**: IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller
- **flashsystem-a9000**: IBM FlashSystem A9000
- **flashsystem-9100**: IBM FlashSystem 9100
- **xiv**: The FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

-dev dev_id

Specifies volumes by storage system ID.

-protected

Specifies that only protected volumes, or volumes that cannot be used in an add copy set action, are shown.

-unprotected

Specifies that only unprotected volumes, or volumes that can be used in an add copy set action, are shown.

volume_id | volume_name | -

Specifies the volume for which data is listed. The same volume can be in multiple groups but not multiple pools.

For IBM DS8000 and TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage systems, use the volume ID for this parameter.

For other storage systems, you can use the volume ID or name for this parameter.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing volumes for a specific storage system

The following command lists information about all volumes in the storage system with ID DS8000:BOX:2107.02191.

```
csmdi> lsvol -devtype ds -dev DS8000:BOX:2107.02191
```

The following output is returned:

Name	ID	Device	Manufacturer	Type	Protected	Space	Efficient
8K410F	DS8000:2107.02191:VOL:010F	2107-02191	IBM	CKD	No	No	
8K410E	DS8000:2107.02191:VOL:010E	2107-02191	IBM	CKD	No	No	
8K410D	DS8000:2107.02191:VOL:010D	2107-02191	IBM	CKD	No	No	

Example: Listing protected volumes for all storage systems

The following command lists information about all protected volumes.

```
csmcli> lsvol -protected
```

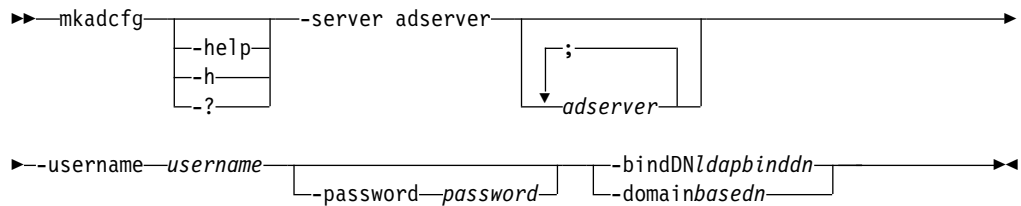
The following output is returned:

Name	ID	Device	Manufacturer	Type	Protected	Space Efficient
8K9005	DS8000:2107.LT742:VOL:0005	2107-LT742	IBM	CKD	Yes	No
8K9004	DS8000:2107.LT742:VOL:0004	2107-LT742	IBM	CKD	Yes	No
8K9003	DS8000:2107.LT742:VOL:0003	2107-LT742	IBM	CKD	Yes	No

mkadcfg

Use the **mkadcfg** command to configure the Active Directory server-based authentication.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-server *adserver*

Specifies the Active Directory servers. The input format is *adservername:port*, for example, *adServer1:636* or for entering an IPv6 address with port, *[0:0:0:0:0:0:1]:636*. Multiple backup Active Directory servers can be specified by using a semicolon to separate each server. If a port is not specified, the default port that is used is 389.

-username *username*

Specifies the user name that is required for accessing the Active Directory domain. Any domain user from the Active Directory server that is identified by the server parameter can be specified for this operation.

-password *password*

Specifies the password of the user who is specified with the **username** parameter. To hide the password, call the command without this option. The command prompts for the password, which will not be echoed.

-baseDN

Specifies the search base for users and groups.

-domain *domain*

Specifies the search base for users and groups. This option is kept for legacy reasons and functions the same as **-baseDN**.

Note: The parameters **-domain** and **-baseDN** in the CLI are equivalent.

Example: Establishing an Active Directory server configuration

```
csmcli> mkadcfg -server ADserver1.ibm.com:1234 -username admin -password  
passw0rd -baseDN cn=users,dc=ibm,dc=com
```

OR

```
csmcli> mkadcfg -server ADserver1.ibm.com:1234 -username admin -password  
passw0rd -domain cn=users,dc=ibm,dc=com
```

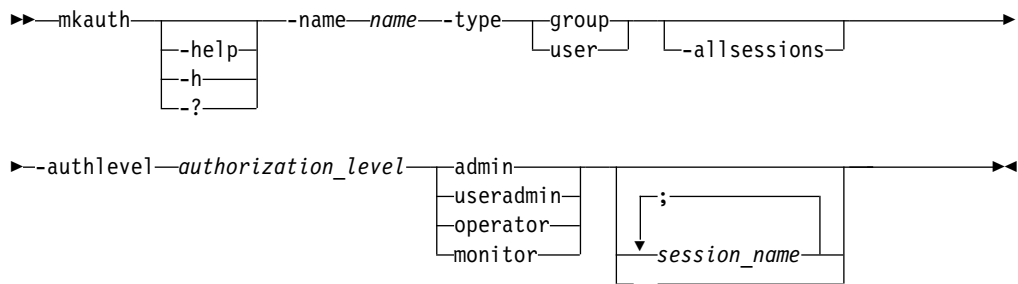
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR4950I [Aug 11, 2015 9:28:06 AM] Successfully updated the LDAP  
configuration.
```

mkauth

Use the **mkauth** command to grant monitor, administrator, user administrator, or operator authorization to a user. (This command will not remove authorization for an existing user.)

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-name name

Specifies a user ID or group name to which you grant authorization.

-type group | user

Specifies whether the name is of a group or user.

-allsessions

When **authlevel** is set to **operator**, this option indicates that the user will be authorized to manage all existing and future sessions. When set all session names specified will be ignored. The option will be ignored for all other **authlevel** values.

-authlevel authorization_level admin | useradmin | operator | monitor

Specifies the authorization level: **admin**, **useradmin**, **operator**, or **monitor**.

session_name | -

Use this optional parameter when you are assigning operator authorization to a user and want to specify one or more sessions to which the operator has access. This parameter does not apply to monitors, user administrators, or administrators.

To specify multiple sessions, use a semicolon (;) to separate the session names.

If you specify **-authlevel operator** but do not specify a session name, the user is not granted operator status to any of the existing sessions but is granted permission to create new sessions.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). You can specify multiple session names from **stdin** when the dash (-) is specified. The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Adding a group with monitor privileges

The following command grants monitor authorization to the user named csmgroup.

```
csmcli> mkauth -name csmgroup -type group -authlevel monitor
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR4018I Successfully granted the monitor role to csmgroup.
```

Example: Adding a user with operator privileges

The following command grants operator authorization to the user named csmuser.

```
csmcli> mkauth -name csmuser -type user -authlevel operator session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR4016I Successfully granted the session operator role to csmuser.
```

Example: Adding the Superuser group

The following command adds the Superuser group to the Administrator role.

```
csmcli> mkauth -name Superuser -type group -authlevel admin
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR4017I Successfully granted the administrator role to Superuser.
```

mkbackup

Use the **mkbackup** command to create a backup of the configuration data (including storage systems, sessions, and copy sets) in the zero-administration embedded repository.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

Description

Prerequisites:

- You must have Administrator privileges to run this command.
- The user ID that was used to create the backup file must exist on the management server that is being restored.

By default, the backup file is stored in the following location:

Copy Services Manager for Distributed Systems

path_prefix\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties

Copy Services Manager for z/OS Systems

path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties

You can change the default location by editing the **db.backup.location** property in the `rmserver.properties` file, which is in the following location:

Copy Services Manager for Distributed Systems

path_prefix\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties

Copy Services Manager for z/OS Systems

path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties

You can use the backup file to restore the zero-administration embedded repository on a management server that is running on a different operating system.

Example: Backing up configuration data on a Windows operating system

The following command backs up the configuration data.

```
csmcli> mkbackup
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1905I Backup of internal data store completed successfully.  
The following file was created: C:\Program Files\IBM\CSM\wlp\usr\servers\  
csmServer\database\backup\csmBackup_20120825_120138984.zip
```

Example: Backing up configuration data on the IBM z/OS operating system

The following command backs up the configuration data.

```
csmcli> mkbackup
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1905I Backup of internal data store completed successfully.  
The following file was created: /SYSTEM/opt/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/  
csmServer/database/backup/csmBackup_20120825_120138984.zip
```

mkcpset

Use the **mkcpset** command to create copy sets.

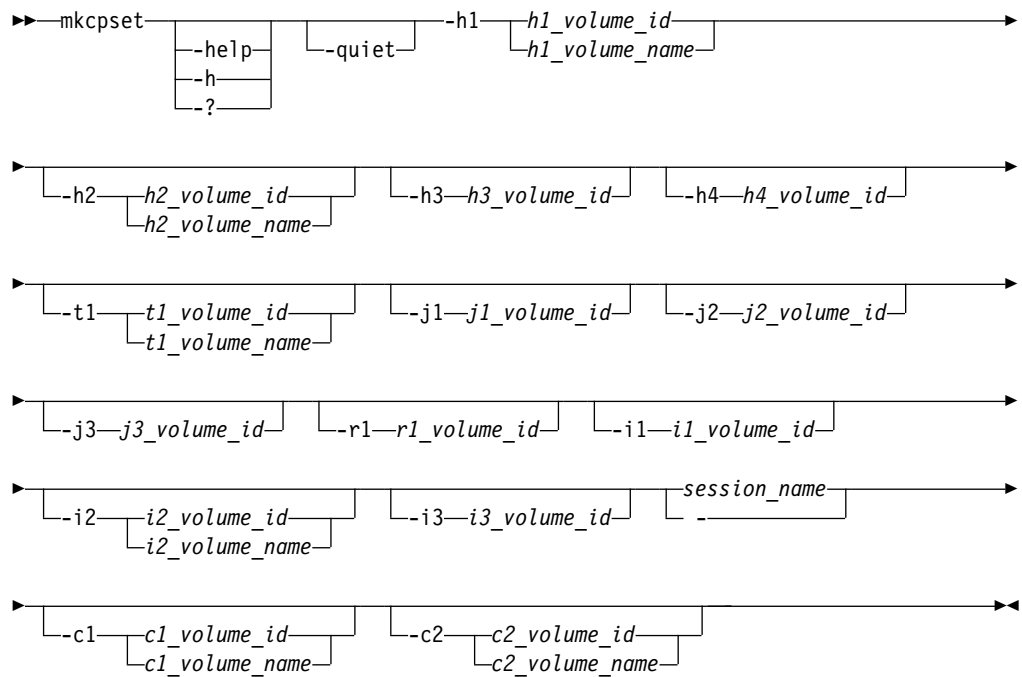
When you run the **mkcpset** command for sessions other than FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Snapshot, you can specify both the host volume and target volume for the copy set. For Snapshot sessions, specify only the host volume for the copy set. The target volume for a Snapshot session is automatically created when the snapshot is created.

For IBM DS8000 and IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage systems, you must use the volume ID to specify a volume. For other storage systems, you can use the volume ID or a user-defined name as shown in the examples that are at the end of this topic. You specify the name for the volume by using the user interface for the storage system.

The types of volumes that you can specify for a copy set depend on the storage system and session type.

Tip: To display the status of volumes in a copy set, use the **lsvol** command.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-h1 {h1_volume_id | h1_volume_name}

Specifies the host volume for the copy set at site 1.

-h2 {h2_volume_id | h2_volume_name}

Specifies the host volume for the copy set at site 2.

- h3** *h3_volume_id*
Specifies the host volume for the copy set at site 3.
- h4** *h4_volume_id*
Specifies the host volume for the copy set at site 4.
- t1** *{t1_volume_id | t1_volume_name}*
Specifies the target volume for the copy set at site 1.
- j1** *j1_volume_id*
Specifies the journal volume for the copy set at site 1.
- j2** *j2_volume_id*
Specifies the journal volume for the copy set at site 2.
- j3** *j3_volume_id*
Specifies the journal volume for the copy set at site 3.
- i1** *i1_volume_id*
Specifies the intermediate volume for the copy set at site 1.
- i2** *{i2_volume_id | i2_volume_name}*
Specifies the intermediate volume for the copy set at site 2.
- i3** *i3_volume_id*
Specifies the intermediate volume for the copy set at site 3.
- c1** *{c1_volume_id | c1_volume_name}*
Specifies the change volume for the copy set at site 1.
- c2** *{c2_volume_id | c2_volume_name}*
Specifies the change volume for the copy set at site 2.
- r1** *r1_volume_id*
Specifies the recovery volume for the copy set at site 1.
- session_name | -**
Specifies the name of the session that contains the copy sets.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

When you run Metro Global Mirror on the OMVS command line, the parameters for the **mkcpset** command can exceed the character limit that is set by the OMVS prompt. To overcome this limitation, create a script file that is called **mgm_mkcpset.txt** that contains the command that you want to issue. For example:

```
csmdi> mkcpset -h1 DS8000:2107.12345:VOL:0000 -h2 DS8000:2107.67890:VOL:0000
-h3 DS8000:2107.02468:VOL:0000 -J3 DS8000:2107.01934:VOL:0000 myMGMSess
```

To run the script, you must ensure that you are in the CLI directory and have the appropriate paths exported. You then run the script from the command line by using the following sample code:

```
csmdi.sh -script mgm_mkcpset.txt
```

Example: Creating a copy set for an IBM DS8000 FlashCopy session by using the volume ID

The following command creates a copy set for a FlashCopy session that is named **session1**. The host volume at site 1 is **DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05** and the target volume is **DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A06**.

```
csmdi> mkcpset -h1 DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05 -t1 DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A06
session1
```


The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1000I Copy sets were successfully created for the session
named session1.
```

```
IWNR2001I The pair, the ID of the source volume and the ID of the target volume,
was created in the session named session1 for the copy set with a
volume ID of DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05, a source volume ID of
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05, and a target volume ID of DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A06.
```

Example: Creating a copy set for an IBM Storwize V7000 FlashCopy session by using the volume ID

The following command creates a copy set for a FlashCopy session that is named session2. The host volume at site 1 is STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7 and the target volume is STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:8.

```
csmlcli> mcpset -quiet -h1 STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7 -t1
STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:8 session2
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWIWNR2001I The pair was created in session session2 for copy set
with a copy set ID of STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7,
with a source volume ID of STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7(myvolume1),
and a target volume ID of STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:8(myvolume2).
```

Example: Creating a copy set for a Storwize V7000 FlashCopy session by using the volume name

The following command creates a copy set for a FlashCopy session that is named session2. The host volume at site 1 is STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:myvolume1 and the target volume is STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:myvolume2.

```
csmlcli> mcpset -quiet -h1 STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:myvolume1 -t1
STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:myvolume2 session2
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWIWNR2001I The pair was created in session session2 for copy set
with a copy set ID of STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7,
with a source volume ID of STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:7(myvolume1),
and a target volume ID of STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:FREEBIRD2:8(myvolume2).
```

Example: Creating a copy set for an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Snapshot session by using the volume ID

The following command creates the volume XIV:VOL:6000646:110789 for an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Snapshot session that is named session3.

```
csmlcli> mcpset -h1 XIV:VOL:6000646:110789 session3
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1000I Copy sets were created for the session named session3.
```

Example: Creating a copy set for an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Snapshot session by using the volume name

The following command creates the volume XIV:VOL:6000646:myvolume for an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Snapshot session that is named session3.

```
csmlcli> mcpset -h1 XIV:VOL:6000646:myvolume session3
```

The following output is returned:

Example: Creating a copy set for a SAN Volume Controller Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes session

```
csmcli> mkcpset -h1 SVC:VOL:NYSVC08:1010 -c1 SVC:VOL:NYSVC08:1011  
-h2 SVC:VOL:NYSVC08:1012 -c2 SVC:VOL:NYSVC08:1013 session4
```

INWR2001I The pair was created in session session4 for copy set with a copy set ID of SVC:VOL:NYSVC08:1010, with a source volume ID of SVC:VOL:NYSVC08:1010(tvdisk2010), and a target volume ID of SVC:VOL:NYSVC08:1012(tvdisk2012).

Use the **mkdevicedump** command to collect diagnostic information on a storage device. The only storage devices currently supported by this command are DS8000 devices using an HMC connection. Users with administrator authority who have administrator or service authorization on the HMC can issue **mkdevicedump** through the HMC connection.

```

mkdevicedump -help -quiet -type warmstart device_id
              -h
              -?

```

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Specifies the type of diagnostic information to collect on a storage device.

The **-type warmstart** parameter initiates a warmstart on the storage system, which causes the storage system to collect a state save that is useful in diagnosing problems. This action should only be used under the direction of your technical support representative. This action is restricted to the following usage rules enforced by the storage system and not the server:

- 140 IBM Copy Services Manager: Command-Line Interface User's Guide

- If you enter the **-type warmstart** parameter more than 10 times during a 24-hour period, the warmstart does not collect the microcode diagnostic data.

odd

The **-type odd** parameter initiates an “on-demand dump” request.

device_id | -

Specifies the ID of the storage system that you want to collect diagnostic data on.

Tip: To list the valid storage system IDs, use the **lsdevice** command.

Example: Issuing a warmstart on an IBM DS8000

The following command refreshes the storage system DS8000:BOX:2107.02341 before the command has completed.

```
csmcli> mkdevicedump -type warmstart DS8000:BOX:2107.02341
```

The following output is returned when command has been submitted and accepted by the server:

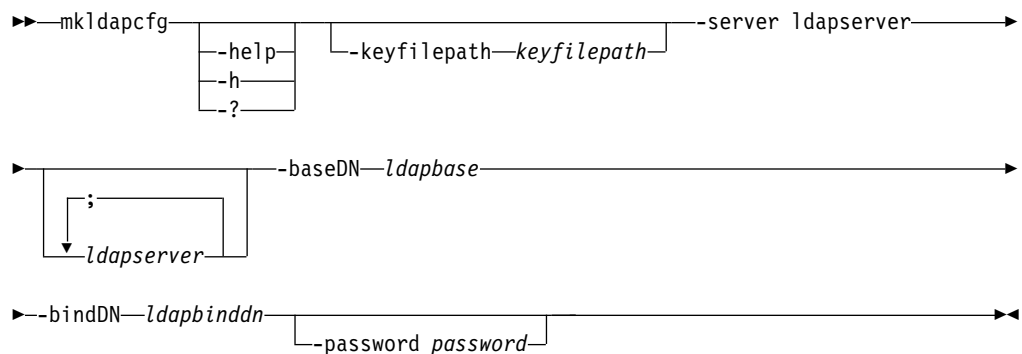
This command initiates a warmstart on the storage image, which causes the storage image to collect microcode data that is useful in diagnosing problems. Do you want to continue? [y/n]:y

IWNH2000I [Aug 18, 2017 2:18:20 PM] The create state save command with warmstart option succeeded for storage system 2107.BAY81.

mkldapcfg

Use the **mkldapcfg** command to configure an LDAP server based authentication.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-keyfilepath keyfilepath

Specifies the absolute path of the key file that holds the CA certificate. If multiple certificates are required then include all of them in a single file to be provided as input. The file should be present on the system from which **mkldapcf** is initiated. This parameter is optional.

Note: For information on how to create a file with multiple certificates, see the topic "Creating a file with multiple certificates for LDAP configuration" in the online help information at IBM Copy Services Manager online product documentation (<http://www-01.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSESK4>).

-server *ldapservers*

Specifies the LDAP servers. The input format is *ldapserversname:port*, for example, *ldapservers1:636* or for entering an IPv6 address with port, *[0:0:0:0:0:0:1]:636*. Multiple backup LDAP servers can be specified by using a semicolon to separate each server. Multiple LDAP servers must be replicas of the primary LDAP server, or they can be any LDAP host with the same schema, which contain data that is mirrored from the same LDAP Data Interchange Format (LDIF) file. If a port is not specified, the default ports used are 389 and 636 for *ldap://* and *ldaps://*, respectively.

-baseDN *ldapbase*

Specifies the LDAP base DN.

-bindDN *bindDN*

Specifies the binding DN of an LDAP user who has sufficient permissions to read user data.

-password *password*

Specifies the password of the user specified with **bindDN** parameter. To hide the password, call the command without this option. The command will prompt for the password which will not be echoed.

Example: Establishing an LDAP server configuration without security

```
csmcli> mklapcfg -server ldapservers.ibm.com:1234  
-bindDN cn=root -baseDN ou=test,o=ibm,c=us -password passwd0rd
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR4950I [Aug 11, 2015 8:45:21 AM] Successfully updated the  
LDAP configuration.
```

Establishing an LDAP server configuration with security

```
csmcli> -server ldapservers.ibm.com:1234 -bindDN cn=root  
-baseDN ou=test,o=ibm,c=us -keyfilepath c:\security\ldap.crt
```

The following output is returned:

```
Please enter a password:>  
An LDAP configuration already exists. Are you sure you want to replace  
it? [y/n]:y  
IWNR4950I [Aug 11, 2015 8:45:21 AM] Successfully updated the LDAP  
configuration.
```

mklogpkg

Use the **mklogpkg** command to create a log package. The log package is written to the file that is specified in the *csm_install_directory\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties\Diagnostics.properties* file.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

Example: Creating a log package on a Windows operating system

The following command creates a log package.

```
csmcli> mklogpkg
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNRR1198I  Log packages were successfully created and placed at
location C:\Program Files\IBM\CSM\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties\
CSM-csm-1234 2012-10-29_11-11-02.jar
```

Example: Creating a log package on the IBM z/OS operating system

The following command creates a log package.

```
csmcli> mklogpkg
```

The following output is returned:

```

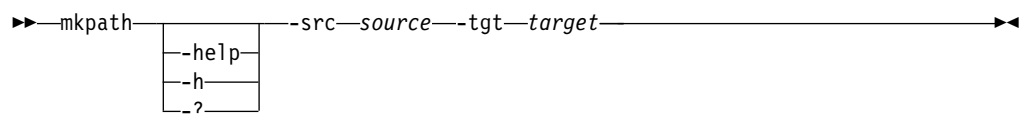
IWNRR1198I  Log packages were successfully created and placed at
location /SYSTEM/opt/CSM/RM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties/
CSM-csm-1234 2012-10-29 11-11-02.jar

```

mkpath

Use the **mkpath** command to create a Fibre Channel path or paths between a source logical subsystem (LSS) and a target LSS.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-src *source*

Specifies the source LSS and port (ESS and DS series storage servers). This must be specified in the format *type.serial.lss(hex).port(hex)* (for example, ESS:2105.FCA18:LSS:10.00FF).

-tgt *target*

Specifies the target LSS and port (ESS and DS series storage servers). This must be specified in the format *type.serial.lss(hex).port(hex)* (for example, ESS:2105.FCA18:LSS:10.00FF).

Description

The **mkpath** command uses the information from the **ls** command to create a path or paths between the source LSS and the target LSS. You can specify a number of paths to create between 1 and 8.

Notes:

- This command creates new paths in addition to paths that already exist between the two specified LSSs.
- Only Fibre Channel paths are supported for ESS and DS series storage servers.
- You must verify the ports that are to be used in the path.
- For DS series storage servers, the plant of manufacturer must be added to the beginning of the serial number, making the serial number a seven-digit number.
- If you specify a number of paths greater than the number of available paths, existing paths are overwritten.

Example: Creating Fibre Channel paths

The following command creates a Fibre Channel path between the source LSS ESS:2105.20870:12.1 and target LSS ESS:2105.20870:14.2.

```
csmlcli> mkpath -src ESS:2105.20870:12.1 -tgt ESS:2105.20870:14.2
```

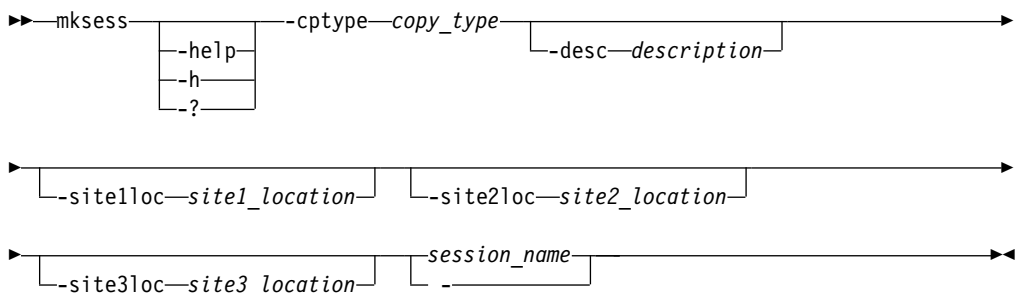
The following output is returned:

Path successfully created.

mksess

Use the **mksess** command to create a session.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-ctype *copy_type*

Specifies the session type. The storage systems that are available for a session differ by session type. The following parameter values are listed by storage system type.

IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800, IBM DS8000

- fc: FlashCopy
- hs: Basic HyperSwap
- mmsd: Metro Mirror Single Direction
- mmfofb: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback
- pmm: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback with Practice
- mm_mm: Metro Mirror - Metro Mirror (This session type is available only for IBM DS8000 storage systems with a microcode level that supports single source to multi-target relationships. To determine whether you can use this session type, refer to the IBM DS8000 documentation for the microcode level that you are using.)
- gmsd: Global Mirror Single Direction
- gmfofb: Global Mirror Failover/Failback
- pgm: Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Practice
- pgm2s: Global Mirror Either Direction with Two Site Practice
- mgm: Metro Global Mirror
- pmgm: Metro Global Mirror with Practice
- mm_gm: Metro Mirror - Global Mirror
- mm_gmp: Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Practice
- mm_gm_s3gm: Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Site 3 Global Mirror
- mm_gm_4s: Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Site 4 Replication

IBM Storwize V3500

- fc: FlashCopy

IBM SAN Volume Controller, IBM Storwize V7000, IBM Storwize V7000 Unified, IBM Storwize V5000, IBM Storwize V3700, IBM FlashSystem® V840, IBM FlashSystem V9000, and IBM FlashSystem 9100

- fc: FlashCopy
- mmsd: Metro Mirror Single Direction
- mmfofb: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback
- pmmsvc: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback with Practice
- gmsdsvc: Global Mirror Single Direction
- gmfofbsvc: Global Mirror Failover/Failback
- pgmsvc: Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Practice
- gmcvsvc: Global Mirror Failover/Failback with Change Volumes

FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate™

- snap: Snapshot
- mmfofbxiv: Metro Mirror Failover/Failback
- gmfofbxiv: Global Mirror Failover/Failback

-desc *description*

Specifies a description for the session. The description can have up to 250 alphanumeric characters.

-site1loc

Specifies a location to associate with the *site 1* volume role.

-site2loc

Specifies a location to associate with the *site 2* volume role.

-site3loc

Specifies a location to associate with the *site 3* volume role.

session_name | -

Specifies a name for the session. For sessions that contain an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate, the session name can have up to 58 alphanumeric characters. For sessions that contain other storage system types, the session name can have up to 250 alphanumeric characters. Session names must be unique.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Creating a FlashCopy session

The following command creates a FlashCopy session named `session1`. The location of the site 1 volume role is Boulder.

```
csmdi> mksess -cptype fc -site1loc Boulder session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1021I Session session1 was successfully created.
IWNR1096I The locations for sessions session1 and Site 1 were set successfully.
```

Example: Creating a Global Mirror with Practice session for IBM DS8000

The following command creates an IBM DS8000 Global Mirror with Practice session named `session1`.

```
csmdi> mksess -cptype pgm -desc "DS8000 Global Mirror with Practice" session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1021I Session session1 was successfully created.
```

Example: Creating a Global Mirror with Practice session for SAN Volume Controller

The following command creates a SAN Volume Controller Global Mirror with Practice session named `session1`.

```
csmdi> mksess -cptype pgmsvc -desc "SVC Global Mirror with Practice" session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1021I Session session1 was successfully created.
```

Example: Creating a Metro Global Mirror session

The following command creates a Metro Global Mirror session named `session1`.

```
csmdi> mksess -cptype mgm -desc "Metro Global Mirror" session1
```


The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1021I Session session1 was successfully created.
```

Example: Creating a Metro Mirror Failover/Failback session

The following command creates a Metro Mirror Failover/Failback session named session1.

```
csmcli> mksess -cptype mmfofb -desc "Metro Mirror" session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1021I Session session1 was successfully created.
```

Example: Creating a Metro Mirror Failover/Failback session for an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

The following command creates a Metro Mirror Failover/Failback session named session1. The location of the site 1 volume role is Tucson and the location of the site 2 volume role is Chicago.

```
csmcli> mksess -cptype mmfofbxiv -desc "Metro Mirror F/F XIV" -sitelloc Tucson  
-site2loc Chicago session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1021I Session session1 was successfully created.
```

Example: Creating a Metro Mirror - Metro Mirror session

The following command creates a Metro Mirror - Metro Mirror session named session1.

```
csmcli> mksess -cptype mm_mm -desc "Metro Mirror - Metro Mirror" session1
```

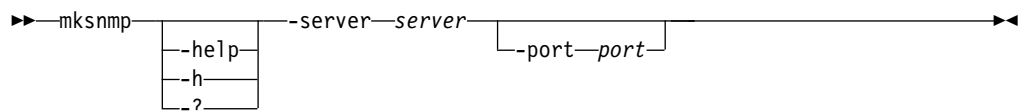
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1021I Session session1 was successfully created.
```

mksnmp

Use the **mksnmp** command to add a specified manager to the list of servers to which SNMP traps are sent. SNMP traps are not specific to any particular session. All traps for any session are sent to each server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-server *server*

Specifies the IP address or domain name of the management server that is to receive SNMP traps.

-port *port*

Specifies a port number to use for receiving SNMP traps. If not specified, the default port is 162. Valid ports are from 1 to 65535.

Example: Sending SNMP traps to a specific management server

The following command sends SNMP traps to the management server with ID 9.11.207.17 and port 2626.

```
csmcli> mksnmp -server 9.11.207.17 -port 2626
```

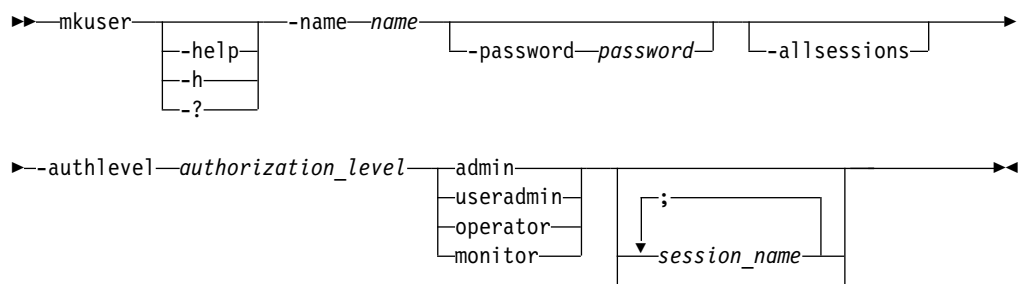
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1701I Host 9.11.207.17:2626 was added to the SNMP listeners list.
```

mkuser

Use the **mkuser** command to create a user in the basic user registry. This command is not available when running on a z/OS system. **Note:** This command can only be issued by a user with Administrator authority.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-name *name*

Specifies a user name you want to add to the basic user registry. The user name must not exceed 104 characters in length and cannot contain spaces, tabs, or any of the following characters: " / \ [] : ; | = , + * ? < > ' { } \$ ^ () & % #

-allsessions

When **authlevel** is set to **operator**, this option indicates that the user will be authorized to manage all existing and future sessions. When set all session names specified will be ignored. The option will be ignored for all other **authlevel** values.

-password *password*

Specifies the password to set for the new user. Password must be a valid set of characters. If you do not include this parameter, you will be prompted for the password. If prompted, the password will be masked and you will be prompted to confirm the password by retyping it. If the parameter is used, it will display in plain text but no additional prompting will occur. The maximum password length is 104 characters.

-authlevel *authorization_level*

Specifies the authorization level: admin, useradmin, operator, or monitor.

session_name | -

Use this optional parameter when you are assigning operator authorization to a user and want to specify one or more sessions to which the operator has access. This parameter does not apply to monitors, user administrators, or administrators.

To specify multiple sessions, use a semicolon (;) to separate the session names.

If you specify -authlevel operator but do not specify a session name, the user is not granted operator status to any of the existing sessions but is granted permission to create new sessions.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). You can specify multiple session names from stdin when the dash (-) is specified. The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Adding a new operator

The following command adds a new operator jim for three different sessions.

```
csmdi> mkuser -name jim -authlevel operator session1;session2;session3
```

The following output is returned:

```
Please enter the password for user jim:
Please confirm the password for user jim:
IWN4036I Successfully added user jim to the basic user registry.
IWN4017I Successfully granted the session operator role to jim.
```

Example: Adding a new operator

The following command adds a new operator jim for three different sessions.

```
csmdi> mkuser -name jim -authlevel operator session1;session2;session3
```

The following output is returned:

```
Please enter a password for user jim:
Please confirm the password for user jim:
IWN4036I Successfully added user jim to the basic user registry.
IWN4016I Successfully granted the session operator role to jim.
```

refreshdevice

Use the **refreshdevice** command refresh the volumes and configuration elements of a storage device.

You must have Administrator privileges to run this command.

Syntax

```
➤ refreshdevice [-help] [-h] [-?] [-nowait] [device_id]
```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-nowait

Specifies that the command response is returned when the command has been submitted and accepted by the server. The command response does not require that the command is completed.

device_id | -

Specifies the ID of the storage system that you want to refresh.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Tip: To list the valid storage system IDs, use the **lsdevice** command.

Example: Refreshing an IBM DS8000 (includes the -nowait parameter)

The following command refreshes the storage system DS8000:BOX:2107.02341 before the command has completed.

```
csmdi> refreshdevice -nowait DS8000:BOX:2107.02341
```

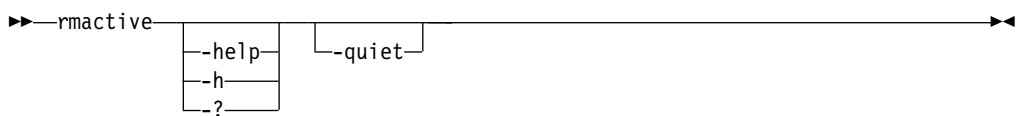
The following output is returned when command has been submitted and accepted by the server:

```
IWNH1611I A refresh of the storage configuration has completed  
for the storage device DS8000:BOX:2107.02341.
```

rmactive

Use the **rmactive** command to remove an active management server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Description

You can run the **rmactive** command only from the standby management server and only when the active and standby management servers are in a non-synchronized state (such as when they are first connecting).

When a standby and active management servers are synchronized, use the **hatakeover** command.

The **rmactive** command corresponds to the Remove Active action in the GUI. Unless the **-quiet** parameter is used, you are prompted to confirm this action.

Example: Removing the active management server

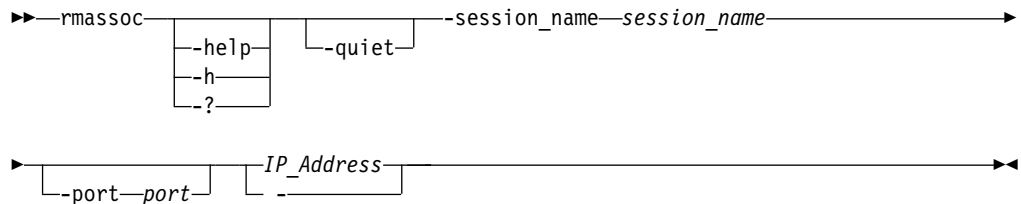
The following command removes the active management server with IP address 127.0.0.1.

```
csmdi> rmactive -server 127.0.0.1
```

rmassoc

Use the **rmassoc** command to remove a session association from the host system; this command removes a session associated with a host system but does not remove the connection to the host system.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-session_name session_name

Specifies the name of the session to remove from the host system.

-port port

Specifies the port number for the host system if the system was added with a port other than the default port 9930.

IP_Address | -

Specifies the IP address or host name of the host system to remove the session from.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Removing a session from a host system

The following command shows how to remove the MyMMsession session from the host system with the 9.11.223.43 IP address. In this example, you could omit the **-port** parameter because port 9930 is the default.

```
csmdi> rmassoc -session_name MyMMsession -port 9930 9.11.223.43
```

rmauth

Use the **rmauth** command to remove monitor, administrator, or operator authorization from an LDAP user or user group. Note: The **rmauth** command is only for LDAP users and groups. To remove users from the basic user registry, you must use “rmuser” on page 162.

Syntax

```
► rmauth [-help] [-h] [-?] -name name -type group | user ►
```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-name *name*

Specifies a user ID or group name from which you remove authorization.

-type *group* | *user*

Specifies whether the name is of a user group or user.

Example: Removing authorization for a group

The following command removes authorization from the csmgroup user group.

```
csmcli> rmauth -name csmgroup -type group
```

The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to remove access for user csmgroup? [y/n]:y
```

```
IWNR4013I Successfully revoked access from csmgroup.
```

Example: Removing authorization for a user

The following command removes authorization from the csmuser user.

```
csmcli> rmauth -name csmuser -type user
```

The following output is returned:

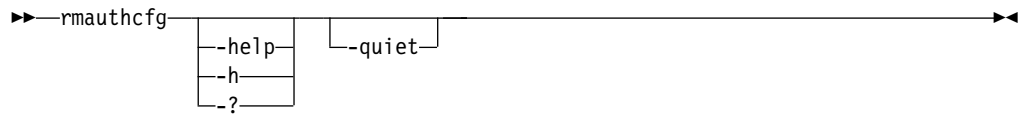
```
Are you sure you want to remove access for user csmuser? [y/n]:y
```

```
IWNR4013I Successfully revoked access from csmuser.
```

rmauthcfg

Use the **rmauthcfg** command to remove the LDAP configuration from being used from user authentication.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Example: Removing an LDAP configuration

The following command removes the connection information for the established LDAP configuration.

```
csmdi> rmauthcfg
```

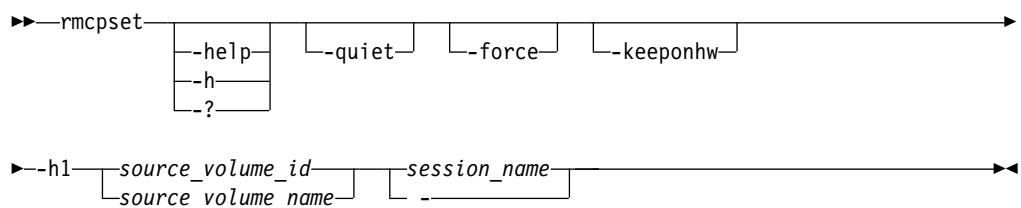
The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to remove the established
LDAP configuration?> y
IWN94963I [Aug 13, 2015 3:14:09 PM] Successfully removed
the LDAP configuration.
```

rmcpset

Use the **rmcpset** command to remove a copy set.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-force

Forces the removal of the copy set despite any errors that occur when removing the copy set relationships from the storage system. When a forced

removal is complete, any relationships that remain on the storage system for that copy set must be removed manually using the storage system interface.

-keeponhw

Specifies that all of the base relationships (Metro Mirror, Global Copy, Snapshot, and FlashCopy) on the storage system are kept even though the copy set is removed from the session. The relationships are removed from any consistency groups that are defined on the storage system.

-h1 {source_volume_id | source_volume_name}

Specifies the volume to be removed.

For IBM DS8000 and IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage systems, use the volume ID for this parameter.

For other storage systems, you can use the volume ID or name for this parameter.

session_name | -

Specifies the name of the session from which the copy set is being removed.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Removing a copy set

The following command removes the copy set with DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05 source volume in the session1 session without prompting for confirmation.

```
csmlcli> rmcpset -quiet -h1 DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05 session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1058I The copy sets for session session1 were deleted.
```

```
IWNR2002I The pair was successfully deleted in session session1 for copy set  
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05 with source DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05 and target  
DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A06.
```

```
IWNR1095I Copy set DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:0A05 in session session1 was  
successfully deleted.
```

Example: Removing a copy set from a session by using the volume nickname

The following command removes the copy set with XIV:VOL:6000646:myvolume source volume in the snap2 session without prompting for confirmation.

```
csmlcli> rmcpset -h1 XIV:VOL:6000646:myvolume snap2
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1058I The copy sets for session snap2 were deleted.
```

```
IWNR2005I The volume with a volume ID of XIV:VOL:6000646:110789(myvolume) was  
successfully removed from the copy set with a source volume ID  
of XIV:VOL:6000646:110789 from the session named snap2.
```

```
IWNR1095I Copy set XIV:VOL:6000646:myvolume in session snap2 was  
successfully deleted.
```

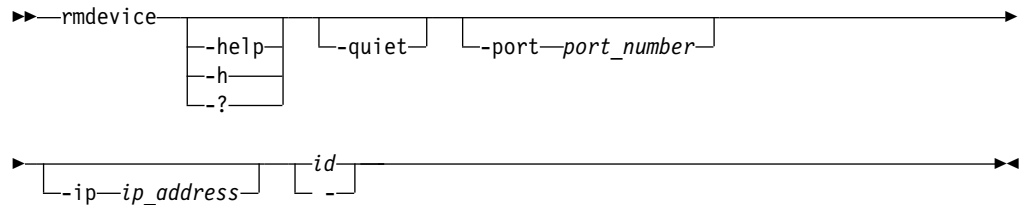
rmdevice

Use the **rmdevice** command to remove a direct connection to a storage system.

To remove a storage system that is attached through a Hardware Management Console (HMC) connection, use the **rmmc** command.

To remove a storage system that is attached through an IBM z/OS connection, use the **rmstorsys** command.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers *yes* to all confirmation prompts.

-port port_number

Specifies the port number if a nondefault port number was entered when the storage system was added.

-ip ip_address

Specifies the IP address or host name of the node that is used by the following storage systems:

- IBM Storwize V3500
- IBM Storwize V3700
- IBM Storwize V5000
- IBM Storwize V7000 or IBM Storwize V7000 Unified
- IBM FlashSystem V9000
- IBM FlashSystem V840
- IBM FlashSystem 9100
- IBM® SAN Volume Controller

This parameter is ignored for all other storage systems.

id | -

Specifies the ID of the storage system to be removed.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Removing an IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800

The following command removes the TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 with ID ESS:B0X:2105.18596 without prompting for confirmation.

```
csmcli> rmdevice -quiet ESS:B0X:2105.18596
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNH1614I The connection at sts596c0:sts596c1 was successfully removed.
```

Example: Removing a SAN Volume Controller

The following command removes the SAN Volume Controller with ID SVC:CLUSTER:RMSVC02 and IP address 127.0.0.1 without prompting for confirmation.

```
csmdi> rmdevice -quiet -ip 127.0.0.1 SVC:CLUSTER:RMSVC02
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNH1614I The storage device at 127.0.0.1 was successfully removed.
```

Example: Removing an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate

The following command removes the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate with ID XIV:BOX:6000646 without prompting for confirmation.

```
csmdi> rmdevice -quiet XIV:BOX:6000646
```

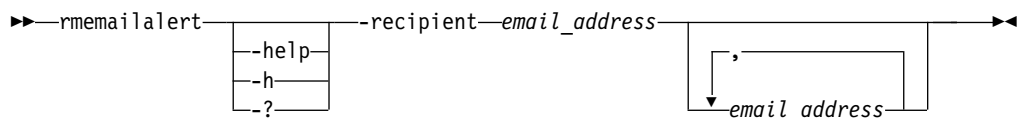
The following output is returned:

```
IWNH1624I The storage system XIV:BOX:6000646 was successfully removed.
```

rmemailalert

Use the **rmemailalert** command to remove e-mail addresses from the list of e-mail addresses to receive e-mail alerts.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-recipient email_address[,email_address]

Specifies the e-mail addresses to be removed from the alert recipient list. Multiple e-mail addresses can be removed using a comma separated list.

Example: Removing an e-mail address from the alert recipient list

```
csmdi> rmemailalert -recipient user@us.ibm.com
```

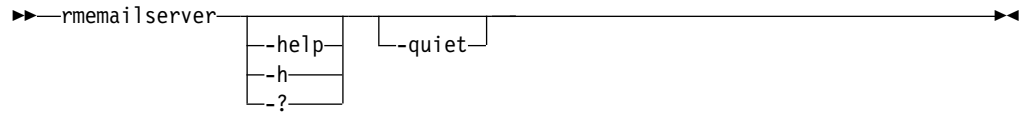
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1720I [Apr 15, 2016 8:38:29 AM] The e-mail recipient list has been updated.  
IWNR1723I [Apr 15, 2016 8:38:29 AM] The e-mail recipient user@us.ibm.com  
has been removed.
```

rmemailserver

Use the **rmemailserver** command to remove the SMTP server configuration used to send e-mail alerts. After submitting the command, e-mail alerts will no longer be sent.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Example: Removing an SMTP server for e-mail alerts

```
csmcli> rmemailserver
```

The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to remove the SMTP server configuration for e-mail alerts?
```

```
[y/n] y
```

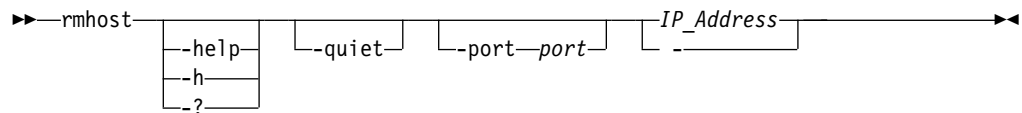
```
IWNRI712I [Apr 15, 2016 8:50:31 AM] Successfully removed SMTP server configuration.
```

rmhost

Use the **rmhost** command to remove a connection to a host system from the copy services management server.

For z/OS host systems, this command is applicable only if the copy services management server is connected to the host system by using an IP address or host name.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-port *port*

Specifies the port number for the host system to be removed if the system was added with a port other than the default port 9930.

IP_Address | -

Specifies the IP address or host name of the host system to be removed.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Removing host systems

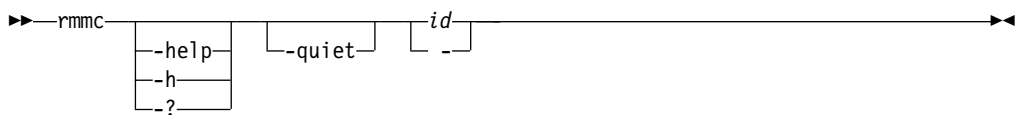
The following command shows how to remove a host system with IP address 192.0.2.0. In this example, you could omit the **-port** parameter because port 9930 is the default.

```
csmdi> rmhost -port 9930 192.0.2.0
```

rmmc

Use the **rmmc** command to remove a management console.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | **-h** | **-?**

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

id | -

Specifies the ID of the management console to be removed.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Removing a management console

The following command removes a Hardware Management Console with ID HMC:127.0.0.1 without prompting for confirmation.

```
csmdi> rmmc -quiet HMC:127.0.0.1
```

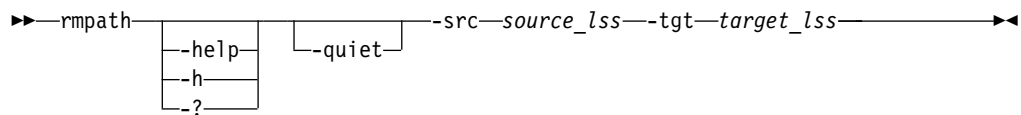
The following output is returned:

```
IWNH1614I The storage device at HMC:127.0.0.1 was successfully removed.
```

rmppath

Use the **rmppath** command to remove a path or paths between a source logical subsystem (LSS) and a target LSS.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-src source_lss

Specifies the source LSS and port DS series storage servers) for the path to be removed. Use the following format: DS: 2105.20870:12.1.

-tgt target_lss

Specifies the target LSS and port (DS series storage servers) for the path to be removed. Use the following format: DS: 2105.20870:12.1.

Description

Notes:

- Removing a path removes only the path and ports specified and will not remove any additional paths.
- Only Fibre Channel paths are supported for DS8000.

Example: Removing paths

The following command removes the paths between the source LSS ds:2015.23884:11.4 and a target LSS ds:2105.23005:11.3.

```
csmdi> rmpath -src ds:2015.23884:11.4 -tgt ds:2105.23005:11.3
```

The following output is returned:

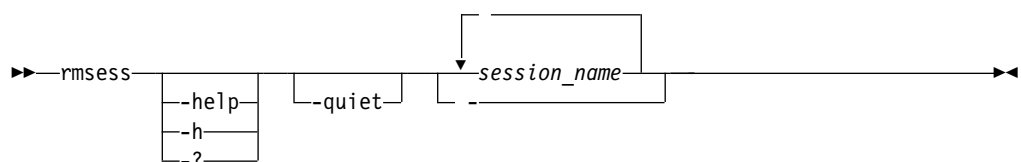
Path successfully removed.

rmssess

Use the **rmssess** command to remove a session.

Important: You can remove only those sessions that are in the Defined state.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

session_name... | -

Specifies the name of the session to be removed. Separate multiple session names using a blank space.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Removing a session

The following command removes the session1 session.

```
csmdi> rmsess -quiet session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1022I Session session1 was successfully deleted.
```

rmsnmp

Use the **rmsnmp** command to remove the specified manager from the list of servers to which SNMP traps are sent.

Syntax

```
➤ rmsnmp [-help | -h | -?] -server server ➤
```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-server server

Specifies the IP address or domain name of the server that will no longer receive SNMP traps.

Example: Removing a server from receiving SNMP traps

The following command removes the management server with IP address 127.0.0.1 from receiving SNMP traps.

```
csmdi> rmsnmp -server 127.0.0.1
```

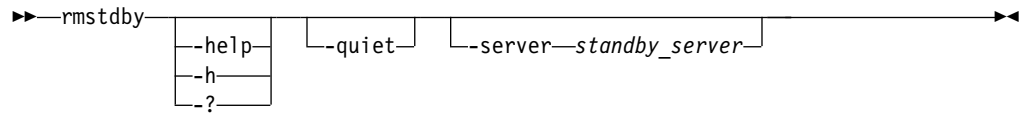
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1702I Host 127.0.0.1 was removed from the SNMP listeners list.
```

rmstdby

Use the **rmstdby** command to remove a standby management server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

```
-server standby_server
```

The IP address of the standby management server that you are removing.

Example: Removing a standby management server

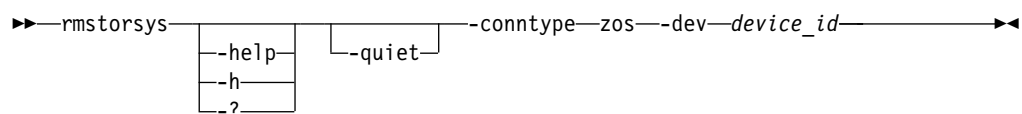
The following command removes the standby management server with IP address 127.0.0.1.

```
csmcli> rmstdby -server 127.0.0.1
```

rmstorsys

Use the **rmstorsys** command to remove a specific storage system and its volumes connected through a z/OS connection to the copy services management server configuration.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-conntype zos

Specifies the type of connection that the storage systems uses. Currently, you can specify only `zos` for a z/OS connection.

-dev *device_id*

Specifies the ID of the DS or ESS storage system that is to be removed from the configuration.

Tip: Use the **lsdevice** command to display a list of valid storage system IDs.

Description

Important:

- You must have Administrator privileges to run this command.
- You can run this command only from the copy services management server that is installed on a system running the z/OS operating system.
- This command removes only the z/OS connection to the specified storage system. To remove other connection types to the same storage system, use the **rmdevice** or **rmmc** command.

If copy services management server has multiple connections to a storage system, the order in which you remove the connections produces different results:

- If you remove direct and HMC connections first, the fixed-block and non-attached CKD volumes that are attached through these connection types are removed from the copy services management server configuration.
- The remaining CKD volumes that are attached through the z/OS host connection remain in the copy services management server configuration until the z/OS host connection is removed.
- If you remove the z/OS host connection first and there is an HMC or direct connection to volumes, those volumes are not removed from the copy services management server configuration.

To remove a storage system that is attached through a direct connection, use the **rmdevice** command. To remove a storage system that is attached through an hardware-management-console (HMC) connection, use the **rmmc** command.

Example: Removing the z/OS connection

This example illustrates how to remove the z/OS connection to the storage system with ID ESS:B0X:2105.12345.

```
csmdi> rmstorsys -dev ESS:B0X:2105.12345 -conntype zos
```

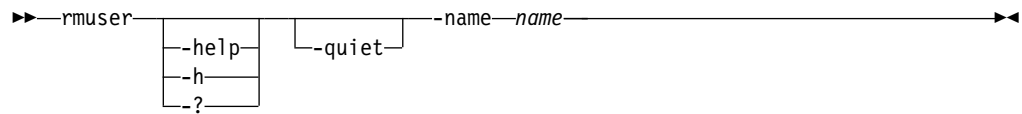
The following output is returned:

```
IWNH1614I The storage device at ESS:B0X:2105.12345 was successfully removed.
```

rmuser

Use the **rmuser** command to remove a user from the basic user registry. When issued, the user will be removed from the basic user registry and all authentication is removed from the database. Note: This command can only be issued by a user with Administrator authority. The **rmuser** command is only for users from the basic user registry. To remove an LDAP user or group, you must use "rmauth" on page 152.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-name *name*

Specifies a user name you want to remove from the basic user registry.

Example: Removing a user

The following command removes a user bob.

```
csmdi> rmuser -name bob
```

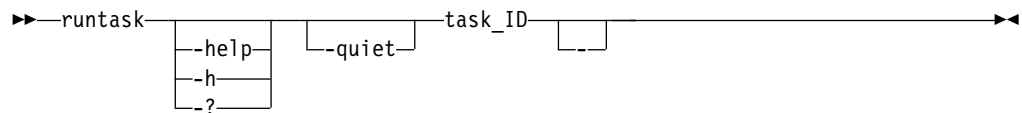
The following output is returned:

```
Are you sure you want to remove user bob? [y/n]:y
IWN4037I Successfully removed user bob from the basic user registry.
IWN4013I Successfully revoked access from bob.
```

runtask

Use the **runtask** command to run a specified scheduled task. **Tip:** To list all of the scheduled tasks use the **lstasks** command.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

task_id | -

Specifies the ID for the scheduled task that will be run.

Example: Starting a scheduled task 12

The following command runs the scheduled task with a **task_id** of 12.

```
csmdi> runtask -quiet 12
```

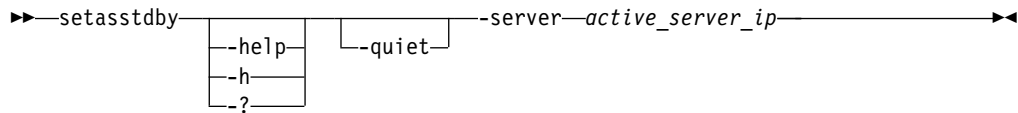
The following output is returned:

IWNR2208I [Aug 14, 2018 5:56:47 PM] Forcing the scheduled task Backup SGC1 to run now.

setasstdby

Use the **setasstdby** command to set a management server to be the standby management server of another active management server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-server *active_server_ip*

Specifies the IP address of the active management server for which the local management server is to be the standby server.

Example: Creating a standby management server

The following command sets the local server as a standby management server for the active management server with IP address 127.0.0.1.

```
csmdi> setasstdby -server 127.0.0.1
```

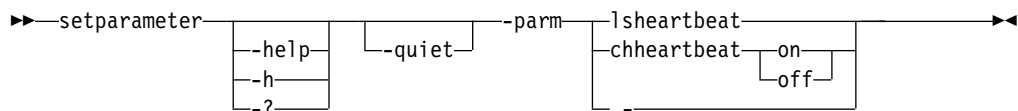
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR3020I Connection to the active high-availability server at
system1.csm.example.com making the server
system2.csm.example.com a standby was successful.
```

setparameter

Use the **setparameter** command to set the system parameters.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-parm {lsheartbeat | - chheartbeat { on | off } | -}

Specifies one of these system parameters:

lsheartbeat

Displays whether the Metro Mirror heartbeat is enabled.

chheartbeat { on | off }

Specifies whether the Metro Mirror heartbeat is enabled (on) or not enabled (off).

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Listing the Metro Mirror heartbeat status

The following command displays whether the Metro Mirror heartbeat is enabled or disabled.

```
csmdi> setparameter -parm lsheartbeat
```

The following output is returned:

The heartbeat function is set on.

```
IWNR1208I The heartbeat was retrieved successfully.
```

Example: Enabling the Metro Mirror heartbeat

The following command turns on the Metro Mirror heartbeat.

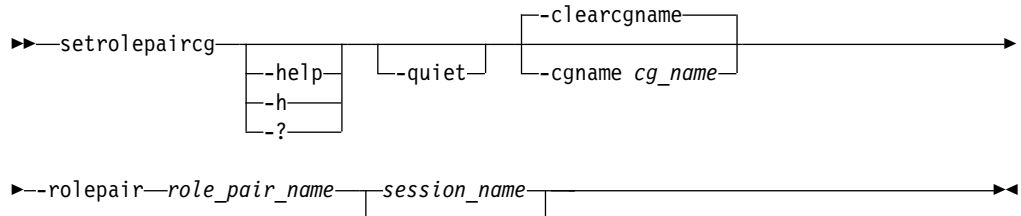
```
csmdi> setparameter -parm chheartbeat on
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1204I The heartbeat has been successfully turned on with the hardware.
```

setrolepaircg

Use the **setrolepaircg** command to assign a specific user defined consistency group name to a role pair. The name provided will be used when the consistency group name is created on the storage system. This command is not supported for all role pairs.

Syntax

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-clearcgroupname

Clears the user defined consistency group name for the specified role pair. This will cause the session to internally select a consistency group name for the role pair.

-cgroupname *cg_name*

Specifies the user defined consistency group name that will be set for the specified role pair. When a user defined consistency group name is set for a role pair, the session will use the specified value instead of internally selecting one.

-rolepair *role_pair_name*

Specifies the role pair for which the consistency group name will be set. Role pair names are defined by the **lsrolepairs** command. Note: Not all role pairs allow a user defined consistency group name. If a role pair is specified that does not allow a user defined consistency group name, no updates will be made and an error message will be returned.

session_name | **-**

Specifies the session name for which you display the role pairs.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Example: Setting a consistency group name

The following command sets a consistency group name for the H1-J2 role pair in session GMsession.

```
csmcli> setrolepaircg -cgroupname 1F -rolepair H1-J2 GMsession
Are you sure you want to set a user defined consistency group name for session
GMsession, role pair H1-J2? [y/n]:y
IWNRI276I The consistency group name was successfully updated for session
GMsession, role pair H1-J2.
```

Example: Clearing a consistency group name

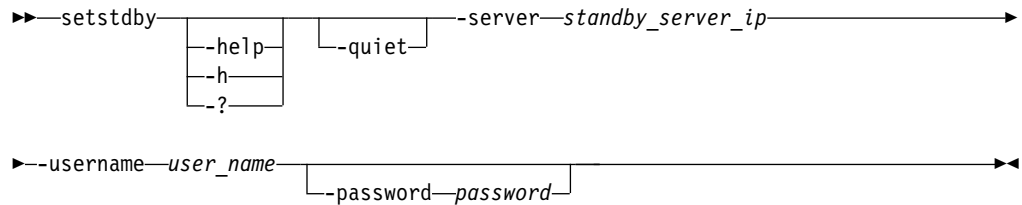
The following command clears the consistency group name from the H1-J2 role pair in session GMsession.

```
csmcli> setrolepaircg -clearcgroupname -rolepair H1-J2 GMsession
Are you sure you want to clear the user defined consistency group name for session
GMsession, role pair H1-J2? [y/n]:y
IWNRI276I The consistency group name was successfully updated for session
GMsession, role pair H1-J2.
```

setstdby

Use the **setstdby** command to set the standby management server for an active management server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

-username *user_name*

Specify the user name for the device.

-password *password*

Specifies this parameter to receive a password prompt. The password will not be visible.

```
-server standby_server_ip
```

Specify the IP address of the server to be the standby management server for the local management server.

Description

Notes:

- If a standby management server is already defined for the active management server, the previously defined standby management server is replaced by the server specified by this command.
- Only the **hatakeover** command can change a backup server to the active server. High availability (HA) must be active before setting an HA role.

Example: Setting the standby management server

The following command sets the server with IP address 127.0.0.1 as the standby management server for active management server on which this command run without prompting for confirmation.

```
csmdi> setstdby -quiet -server 127.0.0.1 -username csmuser
```

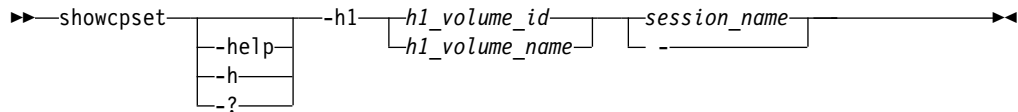
The following output is returned:

```
IWNR3020I Connection to the active high-availability server at
csm1.storage.tucson.example.com making the server
csm2.storage.tucson.example.com a standby was successful.
```

showcpset

Use the **showcpset** command to display properties for a copy set.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-h1 {h1_volume_id | h1_volume_name}

Specifies the volume at host site 1.

For IBM® DS8000, and IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server Model 800 storage systems, use the volume ID for this parameter.

For other storage systems, you can use the volume ID or name for this parameter.

session_name | -

Specifies the session name to which the copy set belongs.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

The following information is listed for the copy set.

Column Label	Details
H1 Volume ID	The ID of the volume at host site 1. This ID is used to identify a copy set in a session. The volume ID is displayed regardless of whether you provide the volume ID or name for the -h1 parameter.
Session	The session name.
Volumes	The volumes that are associated with the copy set. Output is formatted to show the role and the volume ID for that role in the copy set.
Last Result	The last message that was issued.

Example: Listing copy set properties by using the volume ID

The following command lists the properties for the copy set with the host volume ID DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500 in the session session1:

```
csmcli> showcpset -h1 DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500 session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
H1 Volume ID  DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500
Session       session1
Volumes       H1-DS8000:2107.NK791:VOL:1500, H2-DS8000:2107.MW931:VOL:1500,
              H3-DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1500, I3-DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:1505,
              J3-DS8000:2107.04131:VOL:150A
Last result   None
```

```
IWNR1500I Session information about session session1 was successfully obtained.
```

Example: Listing copy set properties by using the volume name

The following command lists the properties for the copy set with the host volume STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:TPCRTBIRD2:CSMRegr_vol08 in the session session2. In this example, the volume name CSMRegr_vol08 is provided for the copy set in the command. The corresponding volume ID is shown in the output.

```
csmdi> showcpset -h1 STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:TPCRTBIRD2:CSMRegr_vol08 session2
```

The following output is returned:

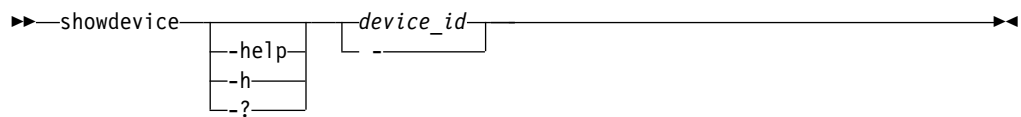
```
H1 Volume ID  STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:TPCRTBIRD2:7
Session      session2
Volumes      H1-STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:TPCRTBIRD2:7, T1-STORWIZE-V7000:VOL:TPCRTBIRD2:8
Last result   None
```

```
IWNRI500I Session information about session session2 was successfully obtained.
```

showdevice

Use the **showdevice** command to display storage system properties.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

device_id | -

Displays a unique identifier for each connected storage system. The element ID format, for example ESS:BOX:2105.FCA57, is used to display storage system IDs.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

For each storage system, the following information is listed. The connection information for the storage system is designated by the connection type.

General

Column Label	Details
Device ID	The storage system ID.
Device Name	The user-defined name of the storage system.
Device Type	The type of storage system. The values are: DS8000, SAN Volume Controller, STORWIZE-V3500, STORWIZE-V3700, STORWIZE-V5000, STORWIZE-V7000, FLASHSYSTEM-V9000, FLASHSYSTEM-V840, FLASHSYSTEM-A9000, FLASHSYSTEM-9100, and XIV
Manufacturer	The manufacturer of the storage system.
Location	The user-defined location associated with the storage system or None.

Direct Connect Information

Column Label	Details
Device IP Address	<p>The IP address or host name of the clusters or nodes that are used by the storage system.</p> <p>IBM DS8000 uses two clusters. Each cluster address is separated by a semicolon. FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate uses three nodes. Each node address is separated by a semicolon.</p>
User name	<p>The user name for the clusters or nodes that are used by the storage system.</p> <p>For IBM DS8000 and the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate, user names are separated by a semicolon.</p>
Port	<p>The port number of the clusters or nodes that are used by the storage system.</p> <p>For IBM DS8000, the port number of each cluster is separated by a semicolon. For the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate, the port number of each node is separated by a semicolon. For example, node1_port;node2_port;node3_port.</p>
Local Server Connection	<p>The state of direct connections to a local management server. For IBM DS8000, this value shows status of the connection to each cluster separated by a semicolon. For example, cluster0_status;cluster1_status.</p> <p>For the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate, this value shows the status of each node separated by a semicolon. For example, node1_status;node2_status;node3_status.</p>
Remote Server Connection	<p>The state of direct connections to a remote management server. For IBM DS8000 this value shows the connection status of each cluster separated by a semicolon. For example cluster0_status;cluster1_status.</p> <p>For the FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate, this value shows the connection status of each node separated by a semicolon. For example node1_status;node2_status;node3_status.</p>

Management Console Information

Column Label	Details
Management Console Local Server Connection	The state of the hardware management console (HMC) connections to the local management server.
Management Console Remote Server Connection	The state of the HMC connections to the remote management server.
Management Console IDs	The ID of the HMC. If there are dual HMCs, the ID for each HMC is separated by a comma.

z/OS Connection Information

Column Label	Details
z/OS Local Server Connection	The state of the z/OS connections to the local management server.
z/OS Remote Server Connection	The state of the z/OS connections to the remote management server.
z/OS Connection IDs	The ID for the IBM z/OS host system that is used to connect the storage system. If the storage system is connected through multiple host systems, the ID for each host system is separated by a comma.

Example: Listing storage system properties for a direct connection

The following command lists the properties of a FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate storage system with the ID XIV:B0X:1234567 and the user-defined name XIV_B. The storage system is connected by using a direct connection.

```
csmcli> showdevice XIV:B0X:1234567
```

The following output is returned:

```
Device ID                XIV:B0X:1234567
Device Name              XIV_B
Device Type              XIV_
Manufacturer             IBM
Location                 xiv_west
Direct Connect Information
Device IP Address        xivb1.storage.sacramento.ibm.com;
                        xivb2.storage.sacramento.ibm.com;
                        xivb3.storage.sacramento.ibm.com
User Name                admin
Port                    7778;7778;7778
Local Server Connection  Connected;Connected;Connected
Remote Server Connection -
Management Console Information
Management Console Local Server Connection -
Management Console Remote Server Connection -
Management Console IDs   -
z/OS Connection Information
z/OS Local Server Connection -
z/OS Remote Server Connection -
z/OS Connection IDs      -
```

```
IWNC4103I The showdevice command completed successfully.
```

Example: Listing storage system properties for an HMC connection

The following command lists the properties of an IBM DS8000 storage system with the ID DS8000:B0X:1234.AB123. The storage system is connected by using an HMC connection.

```
csmcli> showdevice DS8000:B0X:1234.AB123
```

The following output is returned:

```
Device ID                DS8000:B0X:1234.AB123
Device Name              -
Device Type              DS8000
Manufacturer             IBM
Location                 None
Direct Connect Information
Device IP Address        -
User Name                -
```

```

Port -
Local Server Connection -
Remote Server Connection -
Management Console Information -----
Management Console Local Server Connection Connected
Management Console Remote Server Connection -
Management Console IDs HMC:Stg8k11.storage.sacramento.xyz.com
z/OS Connection Information -----
z/OS Local Server Connection -
z/OS Remote Server Connection -
z/OS Connection IDs -

```

IWNC4103I The showdevice command completed successfully.

Example: Listing storage system properties for an IBM z/OS host connection

The following command lists the properties of an IBM DS8000 storage system with the ID DS8000:BOX:1234.56789. The storage system is connected by using a z/OS host connection.

```
csmdi> showdevice DS8000:BOX:1234.56789
```

The following output is returned:

```

Device ID DS8000:BOX:1234.56789
Device Name -
Device Type DS8000
Manufacturer IBM
Location None
Direct Connect Information -----
Device IP Address -
User Name -
Port -
Local Server Connection -
Remote Server Connection -
Management Console Information -----
Management Console Local Server Connection -
Management Console Remote Server Connection -
Management Console IDs -
z/OS Connection Information -----
z/OS Local Server Connection Disconnected
z/OS Remote Server Connection -
z/OS Connection IDs ZOS:abc68.storage.sacramento.xyz.com:5858

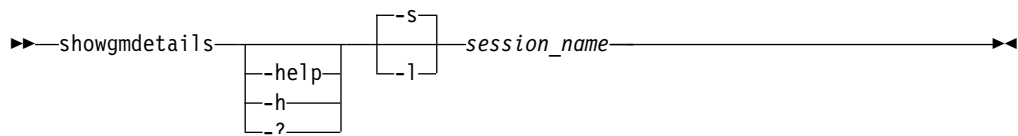
```

IWNC4103I The showdevice command completed successfully.

showgmdetails

Use the **showgmdetails** command to display detailed status information for a Global Mirror session. Use this command for only Model 800 and IBM DS8000 storage systems.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-s Displays default information for the Global Mirror session.

-l Displays detailed information for the Global Mirror session, including:

Column label	Details
Session ID	The Global Mirror session ID.
Master LSS	The name of the storage system acting as the Global Mirror master. Includes storage system ID and subsystem ID.
Copy State	Options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Running• Paused• Fatal• Pause in Progress
Fatal Reason	Fatal reason code of the Global Mirror session.
CG Time	The time of the last consistency group formation according to the Master Storage system. The format is MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM:SS in 24 hour time. The time is based on a 24-hour clock.
Query Time	The time of the query according to the Master Storage system. The format is MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM:SS in 24 hour time. The time is based on a 24-hour clock.
Data Exposure	The average exposure to data loss, in seconds, over the query interval.
Total Failed CGs	The total number of failed consistency group formation attempts since the Global Mirror session has been in Running state.
Total Successful CGs	The total number of successful consistency group formations since the Global Mirror session has been in Running state.
Failed CG Attempts since last success	The number of failed consistency group formation attempts since the last successful consistency group was formed.
Successful CG Percentage	The total percentage since the Global Mirror session has been in Running state.
CG Interval Time	The interval time between attempts to form a consistency group.
Max Coordination Interval	Extended distance consistency maximum coordination interval.
Max CG Drain Time	The maximum time the consistent set of data is allowed to drain at the remote site before failing consistency group formation.
Last Failure LSS	Name of the storage system for the most recent failure of the consistency group formation. Includes storage system ID and subsystem ID.

Column label	Details
Last Failure Reason	The reason code for the most recent failure of the consistency group formation.
Last Failure Master State	The master state for the most recent failure of the consistency group formation.
Previous Failure LSS	Name of the storage system for the previous failure of the consistency group formation. Includes storage system ID and subsystem ID.
Previous Failure Reason	Reason code for the previous failure of the consistency group formation.
Previous Failure Master State	Master state for the second most recent consistency group formation failure.
Subordinate Count	The number of subordinates for this Global Mirror session.
Subordinate Associations	The subordinate boxes for the master Global Mirror box.

session_name

Specifies the Global Mirror session for which the properties are to be displayed.

Example: Displaying management console properties

The following command displays detailed information for the Global Mirror session gmme.

```
csmdi> showgmdetails -l gmme
```

The following output is returned:

```

Session ID                      0x2
Master LSS                      DS8000:2107.FX102:LSS:71
Copy State                      Running
Fatal Reason                    0x00 Global Mirror Not Fatal
CG Time                        2010/04/16 23:32:58 EDT
Query Time                      2010/04/16 23:32:58 EDT
Data Exposure                   1.00 s
Total Failed CGs                1
Total Successful CGs            725
Failed CG Attempts since last success 0
Successful CG Percentage         99
CG Interval Time                0 s
Max Coordination Interval       50 ms
Max CG Drain Time               30 s
Last Failure LSS                DS8000:2107.FX102:LSS:71

```

Last Failure Reason	0x0FCC XDC starting increment with wrong state
Last Failure Master State	0x4 Global Mirror Start Increment In Progress
Previous Failure LSS	-
Previous Failure Reason	-
Previous Failure Master State	-
Subordinate Count	0
Subordinate Associations	-

showha

Use the **showha** command to display the high-availability status.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

Description

This command displays the following information:

Column label	Details
Status	High availability status.
Error	Error message, if applicable

Example: Listing high-availability status

The following command lists the high-availability status.

```
csmcli> showha
```

The following output is returned:

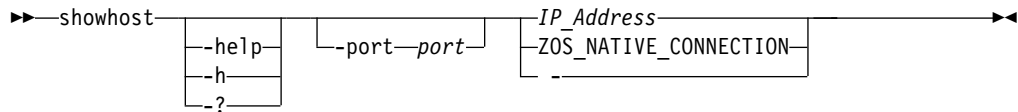
```
Status Synchronized
Error  None
```

```
IWNR3048I The high availability status from server system1.csm.example.com
was successfully queried.
```

showhost

Use the **showhost** command to show information about host system connections server.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-port *port*

Specifies the port to use to access the host system if other than the default port. If a port is not specified, the default port is 5858 for z/OS and 9930 for AIX.

***IP_Address* | ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION | -**

Specifies the IP or host name for the host system or the value `ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION`.

If you want to show information for an AIX host system or a z/OS host system that is connected by using an IP address or host name, enter the IP address or host name for this parameter.

If the copy services management server is installed on the host system, enter `ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION` for this parameter.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

The information that is listed for each host system depends on the host system type, as shown in the following tables:

AIX Host Systems

Column Label	Details
IP Address	The IP address or host name for the host system.
Port	The port number for the connection to the host system.
Type	The type of host system.
Local Status	The status of the connection between the copy services management server and the host system.

Column Label	Details
Remote Status	<p>In high availability (HA) environments that have an active and standby management server, the status of the connection between the remote copy services management server and the host system.</p> <p>If you are running the lshost command on the active server, the remote server is the standby server. If you are running the command on the standby server, the remote server is the active server.</p> <p>If the status of a host connection at the remote copy services management server cannot be determined, Unknown is displayed. This status might be because the HA configuration is disconnected or the status was not sent from the remote copy services management server.</p>
Sessions	The sessions that are associated with the host system. Sessions are shown only if the Open HyperSwap feature is enabled for the session.

IBM z/OS

Column Label	Details
IP Address	The IP address or host name for the host system.
Port	The port number for the connection to the host system.
Type	<p>The type of host system. One of the following values is shown:</p> <p>ZOS_NATIVE The host is the z/OS system on which the copy services management server is installed.</p> <p>ZOS_IP The host is a z/OS system that is connected by using an IP address or host name.</p>
Local Status	The status of the connection between the copy services management server and the host system.
Remote Status	<p>In HA environments that have an active and standby management server, the status of the connection between the remote copy services management server and the host system.</p> <p>If you are running the lshost command on the active server, the remote server is the standby server. If you are running the command on the standby server, the remote server is the active server.</p> <p>If the status of a host connection at the remote copy services management server cannot be determined, Unknown is displayed. This status might be because the HA configuration is disconnected or the status was not sent from the remote copy services management server.</p>
System Name	The name of the host system. If there is no connection to the host system, Unknown is displayed.

Column Label	Details
Sysplex Name	Shows the name of the sysplex that the host system is in, if applicable. If there is no connection to the host system, Unknown is displayed.
User Name	The user name for the host system. The user name is shown only if the host system is connected by using an IP address or host name.

Example: Showing the connection properties for an AIX host system

The following command lists the connection properties for an AIX host system that is connected by using the IP address 192.0.2.0.

```
csmdi> showhost 192.0.2.0
```

The following output is returned:

```
IP Address    192.0.2.0
Port          9930
Type          AIX
Local Status  Disconnected
Remote Status -
Sessions      -
```

Example: Showing the connection properties for a z/OS host system that is connected by using an IP address

The following command lists the connection properties for z/OS host system that is connected by using the IP address 192.0.2.1.

```
csmdi> showhost 192.0.2.1
```

The following output is returned:

```
IP Address    192.0.2.1
Port          5858
Type          ZOS_IP
Local Status  Connected
Remote Status -
System Name   SYSTEM1
Sysplex Name  SYSPLEX1
User Name     ABCUSER
```

Example: Showing the connection properties for a native z/OS host system

If the copy services management server is installed on the z/OS host system, the following command lists the connection properties for the host system.

```
csmdi> showhost ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION
```

The following output is returned:

```
IP Address    ZOS_NATIVE_CONNECTION
Type          ZOS_NATIVE
Local Status  Connected
Remote Status -
System Name   SYSTEM2
Sysplex Name  SYSPLEX2
```


showmc

Use the **showmc** command to display the properties of a management console.

Syntax



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

id | -

Specifies the management console ID in the element ID format (for example, HMC:127.0.0.1).

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Description

The following information is listed for the management console:

Column label	Details
Management console ID	The management console ID in the element ID format.
MC IP address	The IP address or domain name of the management console. For dual management console configurations the IP addresses or domain names are separated by semicolon; for example 192.0.2.0;192.0.2.1.
Device Type	Device Type (HMC)
Location	User-defined location associated with the management console, or None.
User name	The user name for the management console.
Local Connection Status	The state of the connection to the local management server.
Remote Connection Status	The state of the connection to the remote management server.
Attached Devices	The devices that are attached to this management console.

Example: Displaying management console properties

The following command displays the properties of the management console with ID HMC:127.0.0.1.

```
csmdi> showmc HMC:127.0.0.1
```

The following output is returned:

```

Management Console ID    HMC:127.0.0.1
MC ID address            127.0.0.1
Device Type              HMC
Location                 tucson
User name                admin
Local Connection Status   Connected
Remote Connection Status  -
Attached Devices          DS8000:BOX:2107.BRXXX,DS8000:BOX:2107.BRXXX,
                        DS8000:BOX:2107.FNXXX

```

showsess

Use the **showsess** command to display properties for a selected session, including name, description, group managed, and copy type.

Syntax

```

▶▶—showsess —help— —h— —?— session_name —▶▶

```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

session_name | -

Specifies the session for which the properties are to be displayed.

Alternatively, use the dash (-) to specify that input for this parameter comes from an input stream (stdin). The dash is supported only in single-shot mode.

Description

For each session, the following information is listed:

Column Label	Details
Name	Session name.
Group	The user defined name of the session group that the session belongs to.

Column Label	Details
Type	Session type. Values are: FlashCopy Basic HyperSwap Metro Mirror Single Direction Metro Mirror Practice Metro Mirror Failover/Failback Metro Mirror - Metro Mirror Global Mirror Single Direction Global Mirror Practice Global Mirror Failover/Failback Global Mirror Either Direction w/ Two Site Practice Global Mirror Failover/Failback w/ Change Volumes Metro Global Mirror Metro Global Mirror w/ Practice Metro Mirror - Global Mirror Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Practice Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Site 3 Global Mirror Metro Mirror - Global Mirror w/ Site 4 Replication Snapshot Safeguarded Copy Snapshot etc
State	Session state. Values are: Defined Flashing Preparing Prepared Recovering Suspended SuspendedH2H3 SuspendedH1H3 Suspended (Partial) Suspending Target Available Terminating
Status	Session status. Values are: Unknown Normal Warning Severe Inactive
Locations	A list of the locations that are associated with the session.
Copy sets	The number of copy sets that the session is managing.
Copying	An indicator of whether a copying operation is occurring. Values are Yes or No.
Recoverable	An indicator of whether the session is recoverable. Values are Yes or No.
Active host	Name of the active host.
Error Count	Number of errors for all roles.

Column Label	Details
Description	Session description that you define.

Example: Listing session properties for a Metro Global Mirror with Practice session

The following command lists properties for the session named session1.

```
csmcli> showsess session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Name          session1
Group         group1
Type          Metro Global Mirror w/ Practice
State         Defined
Status        Inactive
Locations     Site1, Site2, Site3
Copy Sets     10
Copying       No
Recoverable   No
Active Host    H1
Error Count    0
Description    -
Transitioning  No
Detailed Status -
```

```
IWNR1500I Session information about session session1 was successfully obtained.
```

Example: Listing session properties for an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Snapshot session

The following command lists properties for the session named session1.

```
csmcli> showsess session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Name          session1
Group         -
Type          Snapshot
State         Target Available
Status        Active
Locations     Site1
Copy Sets     10
Copying       No
Recoverable   Yes
Active Host    H1
Error Count    0
Description    -
Transitioning  No
H1 Pool       XIV:P00L:12345:67890
H1 Consistency Group session1
Detailed Status -
```

```
IWNR1500I Session information about session session2 was successfully obtained.
```

Example: Listing session properties for an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Metro Mirror session

The following command lists properties for the session named session1.

```
csmcli> showsess session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Name          session1
Group         -
Type          Metro Mirror Failover/Failback
State         Prepared
Status        Active
Locations     Site1, Site2
Copy Sets     10
Copying       Yes
Recoverable   Yes
Active Host    H1
Error Count   0
Description   -
Transitioning  No
H1 Pool       XIV:POOL:12345:67890
H2 Pool       XIV:POOL:12345:67890
H1 Consistency Group session1
H2 Consistency Group session1
Detailed Status -
```

IWNR1500I Session information about session session1 was successfully obtained.

Example: Listing session properties for an FlashSystem/IBM Spectrum Accelerate Global Mirror session

The following command lists properties for the session named session1.

```
csmdi> showsess session1
```

The following output is returned:

```
Name          session1
Group         -
Type          Global Mirror Failover/Failback
State         Prepared
Status        Active
Locations     Site1, Site2
Copy Sets     10
Copying       Yes
Recoverable   Yes
Active Host    H1
Error Count   0
Description   -
Transitioning  No
H1 Pool       XIV:POOL:12345:67890
H2 Pool       XIV:POOL:12345:67890
H1 Consistency Group session1
H2 Consistency Group session1
Detailed Status -
```

IWNR2750E Recovery Point Objective for session session1 has passed the threshold of 30 seconds.

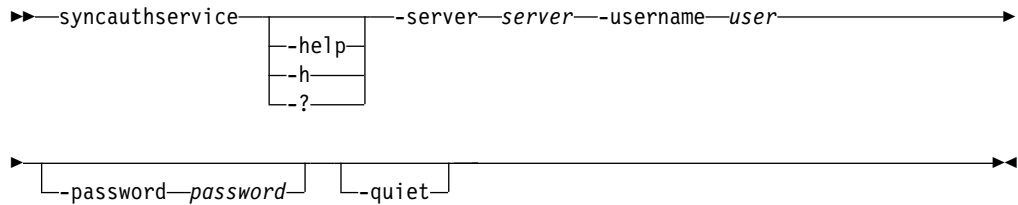
IWNR1500I Session information about session session1 was successfully obtained.

syncauthservice

Use the **syncauthservice** command to synchronize certificates from the authentication service to the authentication service of another server. For change to take effect, csmAuth needs to be restarted on the destination server.

Syntax

Note: This command can only be issued by a user with Administrator authority.



Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-server *server*

Specifies the server IP address or hostname and IP port. This will be the server to synchronize the authentication service to. The input format is *servername:port*, for example, *csm.ibm.com:9560*. The input format for an IPv6 address with port is *[IPv6 address]:port*, for example, *[0:0:0:0:0:0:1]:9560*. The IP port is optional. If no port is provided, it will default to the same port that the CLI connection is using.

Note: If you want to synchronize from Copy Services Manager on the DS8000 HMC to another server that has a different CLI port, you might first have to unblock the firewall for that port.

-username *user*

Specifies the user name to use to connect to the other server. This user will be used to establish the connection to synchronize the authentication service certificates. This user should have administrative authority on the destination server.

-password *password*

Specifies the password of the user specified with username parameter. To hide the password, call the command without this option. The command will prompt for the password which will not be echoed.

-quiet

Suppresses the confirmation prompt for this command. This flag answers yes to all confirmation prompts.

Example: Synchronizing authentication service certificates to another server

```
csmcli> syncauthservice -server csm.ibm.com -username csmadmin
```

The following output is returned:

```
Please enter a password:
```

```
>
```

```
Are you sure you want to overwrite the certificates of another authentication service? [y/n]:y
```

```
IWNR4980I [Dec 20, 2016 10:30:07 AM] Successfully synchronized authentication service certificate to server csm.ibm.com. The csmAuth server needs to be restarted on csm.ibm.com for changes to take effect.
```

Example: Synchronizing authentication service certificates to another server using an alternate port

```
csmcli> syncauthservice -server csm.ibm.com:1234 -username csmadmin -password  
passw0rd -quiet
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR4980I [Dec 20, 2016 10:31:51 AM] Successfully synchronized authentication  
service certificate to server csm.ibm.com. The csmAuth server needs  
to be restarted on csm.ibm.com for changes to take effect.
```

testalert

Use the **testalert** to send a test alert using the current alert configuration. Currently only supports sending a test e-mail alert.

Syntax

```
➤ testalert -email ➤  
┌--help--┐  
├--h-----┤  
└--?-----┘
```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

-email

Sends an e-mail alert using the current using the SMTP server configuration and the e-mail alert recipient list.

Example: Sending a test alert

```
csmcli> testalert
```

The following output is returned:

```
IWNR1718I [Apr 15, 2016 9:25:08 AM] E-mail sent.
```

ver

Use the **ver** command to display the current version of IBM Copy Services Manager.

Syntax

```
➤ ver ➤  
┌--help--┐  
├--h-----┤  
└--?-----┘
```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

Example: Displaying the current version

The following command displays the current version of Copy Services Manager that is running on the local system.

```
csmcli> ver
```

The following output is returned:

IBM Copy Services Manager Command Line Interface (CLI)
Copyright 2013 IBM Corporation
Version: 4.1.1
Build: g100-090804

whoami

Use the **whoami** command to show the name of the user that is logged on.

Syntax

```

>> whoami
--help
--h
--?

```

Parameters

-help | -h | -?

Lists help for the command. If you specify additional parameters and arguments, those parameters and arguments are ignored.

Example: Displaying the current user name

The following command displays the name of the current user.

```
csmcli> whoami
```

The following output is returned:

```
Currently logged in as administrator
Server: server1
Port: 9560
Authentication file: null
```

Appendix. Configuration files

This topic provides default file locations for Copy Services Manager configuration files.

The following table shows the default file location for each configuration file.

Configuration file	Default location
bootstrap.properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• For management server on distributed systems: <i>install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\bootstrap.properties</i>• For authentication server on distributed systems: <i>install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmAuth\bootstrap.properties</i>• For management server on z/OS: <i>path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/bootstrap.properties</i>• For authentication server on z/OS: <i>path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmAuth/bootstrap.properties</i>
csmConnections.properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• For distributed systems: <i>install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties</i>• For z/OS: <i>path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties</i>
diagnostics.properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• For distributed systems: <i>install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties</i>• For z/OS: <i>path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties</i>
repcli.properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• For distributed systems: <i>install_dir\CLI</i>• For z/OS: <i>path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/CLI</i>
rmserver.properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• For distributed systems: <i>install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties</i>• For z/OS: <i>path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties</i>

bootstrap.properties file

Two bootstrap.properties files contain the configuration attributes for the Copy Services Manager servers. One bootstrap properties file sets the configuration for the management server and another for the authentication server.

The bootstrap.properties file is in the following locations on distributed systems:

- Management server: *install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\bootstrap.properties*
- Authentication server: *install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmAuth\bootstrap.properties*

The bootstrap.properties file is in the following locations on z/OS systems:

- Management server: *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/bootstrap.properties*

- Authentication server: *path_prefix*/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmAuth/bootstrap.properties

The file contains the following properties:

https_port_var

Specifies the GUI port (for csmServer) or the authentication port (for csmAuth). The port number is set during installation. However, you can modify this property value to change the port number after installation.

keystore_id

Specifies a unique configuration ID.

keystore_location_prefix

Simplifies specification of the key ring URL for z/OS. The default value is blank for file-based keystores.

keystore_location

Specifies an absolute or relative path to the keystore file. If a relative path is provided (for example, key.jks), the server attempts to locate the file in the csmServer/resources/security directory.

keystore_password

Specifies the password that is used to load the keystore file. The value can be stored in cleartext or encoded form. An encoded password string is preceded with {xor}.

keystore_type

Specifies a keystore type that is supported by the target SDK. The default value is JKS.

keystore_fileBased

Specifies whether the keystore is based on a file. The default value is true.

keystore_readOnly

Specifies whether the keystore is to be used by the server for read operations only. The default value is false. The value false indicates that the server can write to the keystore.

ssl_protocol

Specifies the SSL handshake protocol that is used on the HTTPS port for that server. The value is determined by the Java™ release and can default to the minimum value (for instance, TLSv1.2) automatically during upgrade.

Note: You must restart the server for your modifications of the bootstrap properties file to take effect in the server configuration.

The default contents of each bootstrap.properties file is displayed in the following example.

```
#####
#This section is for the HTTPS settings of the IBM Copy Services Manager GUI. #
#####
https_port_var=9559
ssl_protocol=TLSv1.2

#####
#This section is for the keystore certificate information. This can be      #
#changed to match your environment.                                         #
#                                                                           #
```

```

#Note that keystore_location is relative to csmServer/resources/security      #
#The keystore_location_prefix is typically left blank for file based          #
#keystores.                                                                    #
#####
keystore_id=keystore
keystore_location_prefix=
keystore_location=key.jks
keystore_password={xor}HjktbwhvMzkM0i0p0i0=
keystore_type=JKS
keystore_fileBased=true
keystore_readOnly=false

#####
#This section is a sample JCERACFKS certificate keystore configuration that  #
#can be uncommented and modified to match your environment.                  #
#                                                                              #
#The location must be a safkeyring url syntax with the first qualifier as the #
#IWNSRV and keyring owner and the second qualifier as the keyring name. The  #
#safkeyring url syntax is important, in order to pass it properly into      #
#server.xml, it is split across two properties values. The                  #
#keystore_location_prefix is set to "safkeyring:" while the keystore_location #
#is the rest of the safkeyring url.                                          #
#                                                                              #
#The keystore id and password will be used to create a local keystore with   #
#the specified ID and password holding the cached certificate for the GUI.    #
#####
#keystore_id=keystore
#keystore_location_prefix=safkeyring:
#keystore_location=//CSMUSER/GUIKEYRING
#keystore_password=password
#keystore_type=JCERACFKS
#keystore_fileBased=false
#keystore_readOnly=true

```

csmConnections.properties file

The csmConnections.properties file contains configuration information about Copy Services Manager graphical user interface (GUI) and management server connection information.

The csmConnections.properties file is located in the *install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties* directory on distributed systems, and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties* directory on z/OS.

The file contains the following properties:

csm.server.address

The domain name or IP address of the Copy Services Manager server. The default value is localhost.

Tip: This value must match the value of the **server** property in the *install_dir\CLI\repcli.properties* file on distributed systems, and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/CLI/repcli.properties* file on z/OS.

csm.server.port

The client port for the GUI to connect to the management server. The default value is 9560.

Tip: This value must match the *install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties\rmserver.properties* file and the **port** property in the *install_dir\CLI\repcli.properties* file on distributed systems; and

the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties/rmsvr.properties* file, and the **port** property in the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/CLI/repcli.properties* file on z/OS.

csm.server.authtype

The authentication type for the GUI to connect to the management server. The default value is certificate.

csm.server.keystore

The location of the csmGuiTrust trust file for certificate authentication of the GUI. The default value is /etc.

csm.server.certificate

The certificate ID. The default value is csmserverdefault.

csm.server.standbyPort

The HTTPS port that is used for a standby management server. Define this property if the active and standby management servers run on two different GUI ports to ensure that the URL links to the other management server are valid. For example, if you have an active Windows management server that uses port 9559 for the GUI and a standby z/OS management server that uses port 33209 for the GUI, set this property, if you want the GUIs to be able to start the remote GUI.

diagnostics.properties file

The diagnostics.properties file contains configuration information about Copy Services Manager log packages.

The diagnostics.properties file is in the *install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties* directory on distributed systems, and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties* directory on z/OS.

Restart the Copy Services Manager graphical user interface to activate property changes. Properties are not synchronized between the Copy Services Manager management servers and must be maintained on each Copy Services Manager management server.

The file contains the following properties:

sourcedir

The source directory to be used to create the Copy Services Manager log package.

targetdir

The target directory where Copy Services Manager log packages are to be created. The default directory is *install_dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\diagnostics* on distributed systems, and *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/diagnostics* on z/OS.

repcli.properties file

The repcli.properties file contains the server and port information that is used to communicate with the Copy Services Manager server and the command-line interface.

The repcli.properties file is located in the *install_dir\CLI* directory for distributed systems, and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/CLI* directory for z/OS.

Restart Copy Services Manager to activate property changes. Properties are not synchronized between the Copy Services Manager management servers and must be maintained on each Copy Services Manager management server.

The file contains the following properties:

server The domain name or IP address of the Copy Services Manager server. The default value is localhost.

Tip: This value must match the value of the **csm.server.address** property in the *install dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\csmConnections.properties* file for distributed systems, and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/csmConnections.properties* file for z/OS.

port The client port that is used by the CLI to communicate with the Copy Services Manager server. The default value is 9560.

Tip: This value must match the **communications.port** property in the *rmserver.properties* file that is located in the *install dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer* directory for distributed systems, and in the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer* directory for z/OS. And this value must also match the **csm.server.port** property in the *csmConnections.properties* file in the *install dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer* directory for distributed systems, and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer* directory for z/OS.

rmserver.properties file

The *rmserver.properties* file contains various configuration settings for Copy Services Manager server.

The default location of the *rmserver.properties* file is the *install dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties* directory on distributed systems, and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties* directory on z/OS.

Note: You can use the **chsystem** command with the **-f server** parameter to change the properties.

Restart Copy Services Manager to activate the property changes. Properties are not synchronized between the Copy Services Manager management servers and must be maintained on each Copy Services Manager management server.

The file contains the following parameters that you might need to customize for your environment:

log.file

The name of the Copy Services Manager server log file. The default value is *csmTrace.log*.

The newest log file is the name the same as this value. Subsequent log files have a number that is appended to the file name. For example, *csmTrace1.log* and *csmTrace2.log*.

This log file is in the *install dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\logs\CSM* directory on distributed systems, and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/logs/CSM* directory on z/OS.

log.file.maxFiles

The maximum number of Copy Services Manager server log files that are created before old log files are overwritten. The default value is 50.

log.file.maxFileSize

The maximum size, in KB, of each Copy Services Manager server log file. The default value is 10240.

communications.port

The client port that is used by the GUI and CLI to communicate with the Copy Services Manager server. The default value is 9560.

Tip: This value must match the **port** property in the *install dir\CLI\repcli.properties* file and the *install dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\properties\csm.Connection.properties* file on distributed systems; and it must match the **port** property in the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/CLI/repcli.properties* file and the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/properties/csmConnection.properties* file on z/OS.

communications.haPort

The standby management server port that is used for communication between the active and standby management server. The default value is 9561.

csm.server.snmp_community_string

The SNMP community name. The default value is public.

csm.server.sus_gc_pairs_on_gm_pause

A flag that indicates whether to suspend the Global Copy pairs when a Global Mirror session is suspended. The valid values are true and false.

db.backup.location

The directory that is used by the **mkbackup** command to store a backup copy of the IBM Copy Services Manager database. By default, the backup file is stored in the *install dir\liberty\wlp\usr\servers\csmServer\database\csmdb* directory for distributed systems, or in the *path_prefix/opt/IBM/CSM/wlp/usr/servers/csmServer/database\csmdb* directory for z/OS.

server.logpackages.maxpackages

The maximum number of log packages that is maintained by the server.

server.backup.maxbackups

The maximum number of backups that is maintained by the server.

csm.server.notification.sender.address: <email address>

Specifies the email address from which to send outgoing email alerts. By default, outgoing email alerts are set to come from the generated email address *csmServer@<server hostname>*. However, for some SMTP server software or configurations, this email address is not accepted. Therefore, you can change the outgoing server email address to something that meets the requirements of your environment.

csm.server.ldap.enabled

Enables LDAP in your environment when set to true.

Note: The default value for **csm.server.ldap.enabled** is set to false for z/OS systems and true for distributed systems.

com.ibm.csm.<sessionName>.<rolepair>.userpfc

Specifies which of the Metro Mirror relationships for the Preserve Mirror feature to use. When the Metro Mirror pairs are established, any pairs that are marked with this property are set up so that when the source is flashed the Preserve Mirror feature knows to use these pairs. For example, setting the property to `com.ibm.csm.MySess.H1-H2.userpfc` indicates that session "MySess" and the role pair "H1-H2" should be used for Preserve Mirror.

Notes:

- This property default is set to false. It must be set to true to enable the option on the role pair.
- Use underscores to indicate any spaces in the property setting. For example, for the session "My Sess" you would specify `My_Sess` in the property.

com.server.svc.fc.cleanrate =<cleanrate>

com.server.svc.fc.cleanrate.<sessionName>=<cleanrate>

A cleaning rate can be specified for a FlashCopy session (or a session that contains a FlashCopy sequence) that is independent of the background copy rate. The clean rate controls the rate at which the cleaning process operates. The cleaning process copies data from the target volume of a mapping to the target volumes of other mappings that depend on this data.

Notes:

- For older storage systems running IBM Spectrum Virtualize, the `<cleanrate>` range is 0-100. For new storage systems at release 7.8.1 and higher, the range is 0-150. If this property is not specified, the default rate is 50. For more information on the clean rate, see your storage system user's guide.
- This property is only valid for storage systems running IBM Spectrum Virtualize. If a `<sessionName>` is not specified, the cleaning rate value is applied to all FlashCopy sessions, and sessions that contain a FlashCopy sequence, for storage systems running IBM Spectrum Virtualize.

csm.auto.restart.after.swap=<true>

After a swap occurs, this option automatically restarts replication from the site that was swapped to, to the alternative site without user intervention.

When HyperSwap is enabled on multi-target sessions with Metro Mirror relationships, by default a HyperSwap command or event results in all I/O being swapped to the Metro Mirror secondary. And then the Copy Services Manager session moves to a Target Available state.

After the swap, no replication occurs, and a manual **Start** command must be issued for replication to run again.

If HyperSwap is enabled on the role pair that is automatically started, as soon as all pairs in the role pair reach a Prepared state, the HyperSwap configuration is automatically loaded as well. This option helps to ensure that replication is started quickly after a HyperSwap command or event to provide continual disaster recovery and high availability needs.

When this option is set, synchronization starts automatically, which causes the alternative site to be inconsistent until all pairs in the role pair reach a Prepared state.

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the US. This material might be available from IBM in other languages. However, you may be required to own a copy of the product or product version in that language in order to access it.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

*IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive, MD-NC119
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
US*

For license inquiries regarding double-byte character set (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

*Intellectual Property Licensing
Legal and Intellectual Property Law
IBM Japan Ltd.
19-21, Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku
Tokyo 103-8510, Japan*

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some jurisdictions do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those

websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you provide in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

*IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive, MD-NC119
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
US*

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

The performance data discussed herein is presented as derived under specific operating conditions. Actual results may vary.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to actual people or business enterprises is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work must include a copyright notice as follows:

© (your company name) (year).

Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs.

© Copyright IBM Corp. _enter the year or years_.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

Privacy policy considerations

IBM Software products, including software as a service solutions, (“Software Offerings”) may use cookies or other technologies to collect product usage information, to help improve the end user experience, to tailor interactions with the end user, or for other purposes. In many cases no personally identifiable information is collected by the Software Offerings. Some of our Software Offerings can help enable you to collect personally identifiable information. If this Software Offering uses cookies to collect personally identifiable information, specific information about this offering’s use of cookies is set forth below.

This Software Offering does not use cookies or other technologies to collect personally identifiable information.

If the configurations deployed for this Software Offering provide you as customer the ability to collect personally identifiable information from end users via cookies and other technologies, you should seek your own legal advice about any laws applicable to such data collection, including any requirements for notice and consent.

For more information about the use of various technologies, including cookies, for these purposes, see IBM’s Privacy Policy at www.ibm.com/privacy/us/en and IBM’s Online Privacy Statement at www.ibm.com/privacy/details/us/en in the section entitled “Cookies, Web Beacons and Other Technologies,” and the “IBM Software Products and Software-as-a-Service Privacy Statement” at <http://www.ibm.com/software/info/product-privacy>.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and [ibm.com](http://www.ibm.com) are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at “Copyright and trademark information” at www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml.

Adobe is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States, and/or other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Index

A

adddevice command 8
addemailalert command 11
addemailserver command 12
addhost command 13
addmc command 14
addstorsys command 15

B

bootstrap.properties, configuring 187

C

chauth command 16
chdevice command
 changing passwords 17
 changing user names 17
chhost command 19
chlocation command 21
chmc command 22
chsess command 23
chsystem command 36
chuser command 37
chvol command 38
cmdsess command 39, 42
command line interface
 automatic login authentication 1
command modes x, xii
command-line interface
 configuring 1
 customizing 1
commands
 adddevice 8
 addemailalert 11
 addemailserver 12
 addhost 13
 addmc 14
 addstorsys 15
 chauth 16
 chdevice
 changing passwords 17
 changing user names 17
 chhost 19
 chlocation 21
 chmc 22
 chsess 23
 chsystem 36
 chuser 37
 chvol 38
 cmdsess 39, 42
 dcrequestaction 49
 exportcsv 50
 exportgmdata 51
 hareconnect 54
 hatakeover 54
 importcsv 55
 lsauth 56
 lsauthcfg 58
 lsavailports 60
 lsbackups 62
 lsbackupvols 64
 lscpset
 listing copy set IDs 66
 lscptypes 69
 lsdcrequests 77
 lsdevice 73
 lsemialert 79
 lsemialserver 80
 lshaservers 82
 lshost 84
 lslocation 87
 lslss 89
 lsmc 91
 lspair 93
 lsparmeter 97
 lspath 99
 lspool 102
 lsrolepairs 104
 lsrolescpset 108
 lssess 110
 lssessactions 113
 lssessdetails 115
 lssnapgrp
 listing snapshot groups in a
 session 118
 lssnapgrpactions 120
 lssnapshots
 listing snapshots in a sessions 122
 lssnmp 125
 lsstorcandidate 125
 lstasks 127
 lsvol
 choosing volumes for copy
 sets 129
 displaying information about
 volumes 129
 viewing volume properties 129
 mkadcfg 133
 mkauth 134
 mkbackup 135
 mkcpset
 creating copy sets 137
 mkdevicedump 140
 mkldapcfg 141
 mklogpkg 143
 mkpath 143
 mkssess
 creating sessions 144
 mksnmp 147
 mkuser 148
 refreshdevice 149
 return codes xiii
 rmactive 150
 rmassoc 151
 rmauth 152
 rmauthcfg 153
 rmcpset 153
 rmdevice 155
 rmemailalert 156

commands (continued)

rmemailserver 157
rmhost 157
rmmc 158
rmpath 159
rmsess 159
rmsnmp 160
rmstdby 161
rmstorsys 161
rmuser 162
runtask 163
setasstdby 164
setoutput xiv, xv
setparameter 164
setrolepaircg 165
setstdby 167
showcpset 168
showdevice
 viewing device properties 169
showgmdetails 172
showha 175
showhost 176
showmc 179
showsess 180
syncauthservice 184
testalert 185
ver 185
whoami 186

comments, sending xix

configuration files
 bootstrap.properties 187
 csmcli-auth.properties 1
 csmConnections.properties 189
 default location of 187
 diagnostics.properties 190
 repcli.properties 190
 rmserver.properties 191
configuring the command-line
 interface 1
confirmation prompts xiii
Contacting IBM Software Support
 troubleshooting xx
Copy Services Manager 6.2.5 xxi
copy sets
 listing copy set IDs 66
csmcli-auth.properties 1
csmConnections.properties,
 configuring 189
customizing the command-line
 interface 1

D

dcrequestaction command 49
diagnostics.properties, configuring 190

E

error messages xiii
exportcsv command 50

exportgmdata 51

F

feedback, sending xix
files, configuration 187
flags xiii
format of output xiv

H

hareconnect command 54
hatakeover command 54

I

importcsv command 55
informational messages xiii

L

lsauth command 56
lsauthcfg command 58
lsavailports command 60
lsbackups command 62
lsbackupvols command 64
lscpset
 listing copy set IDs 66
lscptypes command 69
lsdcrequests command 77
lsdevice command 73
lsemailalert command 79
lsemailserver command 80
lshaservers command 82
lshost command 84
lslocation command 87
lslss command 89
lsmc command 91
lspair command 93
lsparameter command 97
lspath command 99
lspool command 102
lsrolepairs command 104
lsrolescset command 108
lsess command 110
lsessactions command 113
lsessdetails command 115
lssnapgrp command
 listing snapshot groups in a
 sessions 118
lssnapgrpactions command 120
lssnapshots command
 listing snapshots in a sessions 122
lssnmp command 125
lsstorcandidate command 125
lstasks command 127
lsvol command
 choosing volumes for copy sets 129
 displaying information about
 volumes 129
 viewing volume properties 129

M

messages xiii
mkadcfg command 133
mkauth command 134
mkbackup command 135
mkcpset command
 creating copy sets 137
mkdevicedump command 140
mkldapcfg command 141
mklogpkg command 143
mkpath command 143
mkseccommandcreating sessions 144
mksnmp command 147
mkuser command 148

N

new features xxi

O

options for output format xiv
output xiii, xiv

P

passwords
 changing 17
problems
 report xx
publications
 product xvii
 related xvii

R

refreshdevice command 149
repcli.properties, configuring 190
reporting problems xx
return codes xiii
rmactive command 150
rmassoc command 151
rmauth command 152
rmauthcfg command 153
rmcpset command 153
rmdevice command 155
rmemailalert command 156
rmemailserver command 157
rmhost command 157
rmmc command 158
rmpath command 159
rmserver.properties, configuring 191
rmseccommand 159
rmseccommand 160
rmstdby command 161
rmstorsys command 161
rmuser command 162
runtask command 163

S

sessions
 listing copy set IDs 66
setasstdby command 164

setoutput xiv, xv
setparameter command 164
setrolepairs command 165
setstdby command 167
setting output format xiv
setting up
 automatic login authentication 1
showcpset command 168
showdevice command
 viewing device properties 169
showgmdetails command 172
showha command 175
showhost command 176
showmc command 179
showsess command 180
special characters in syntax diagrams vii
Summary of changes 6.2.5 xxi
support xx
Support
 contact xx
suppressing confirmation prompts and
 messages xiii
syncauthservice command 184
syntax diagrams
 command emphasis vii
 how to read vii
 special characters vii

T

testalert command 185
trademarks 197
troubleshooting xx

U

user names
 changing 17
user profiles
 changing passwords 17
 changing user names 17

V

ver command 185

W

warning messages xiii
websites xvii
whoami command 186



Printed in USA

SC27-8998-06

